

The following Part 15 regulations contain all updates and changes adopted and released by the Commission as of July 10, 2008. However, changes to the rules do not become effective until at least 30 days after they are published in the Federal Register. It is possible that recent changes to these rules may not have been published in the Federal Register and may not yet be effective. In addition, this version contains some directional notes, not themselves contained in the regulations. These directional notes are enclosed by brackets ([ ]).

## PART 15 - RADIO FREQUENCY DEVICES

### Subpart A - General

- Section 15.1 Scope of this Part.
- Section 15.3 Definitions.
- Section 15.5 General conditions of operation.
- Section 15.9 Prohibition against eavesdropping.
- Section 15.11 Cross reference.
- Section 15.13 Incidental radiators.
- Section 15.15 General technical requirements.
- Section 15.17 Susceptibility to interference.
- Section 15.19 Labelling requirements.
- Section 15.21 Information to user.
- Section 15.23 Home-built devices.
- Section 15.25 Kits.
- Section 15.27 Special accessories.
- Section 15.29 Inspection by the Commission.
- Section 15.31 Measurement standards.
- Section 15.32 Test procedures for CPU boards and computer power supplies.
- Section 15.33 Frequency range of radiated measurements.
- Section 15.35 Measurement detector functions and bandwidths.
- Section 15.37 Transition provisions for compliance with the rules.
- Section 15.38 Incorporations by reference.

### Subpart B - Unintentional Radiators

- Section 15.101 Equipment authorization of unintentional radiators.
- Section 15.102 CPU boards and power supplies used in personal computers.
- Section 15.103 Exempted devices.
- Section 15.105 Information to the user.
- Section 15.107 Conducted limits.
- Section 15.109 Radiated emission limits.
- Section 15.111 Antenna power conducted limits for receivers.
- Section 15.113 Power line carrier systems.
- Section 15.115 TV interface devices, including cable system terminal devices.
- Section 15.117 TV broadcast receivers.
- Section 15.118 Cable ready consumer electronics equipment.

Section 15.119 Closed caption decoder requirements for analog television receivers.  
Section 15.120 Program blocking technology requirements for television receivers.  
Section 15.121 Scanning receivers and frequency converters used with scanning receivers.  
Section 15.122 Closed caption decoder requirements for digital television receivers and converter boxes.  
Section 15.123 Labeling of digital cable ready products.

#### Subpart C - Intentional Radiators

Section 15.201 Equipment authorization requirement.  
Section 15.202 Certified operating frequency range.  
Section 15.203 Antenna requirement.  
Section 15.204 External radio frequency power amplifiers and antenna modifications.  
Section 15.205 Restricted bands of operation.  
Section 15.207 Conducted limits.  
Section 15.209 Radiated emission limits, general requirements.  
Section 15.211 Tunnel radio systems.  
Section 15.212 Modular transmitters.  
Section 15.213 Cable locating equipment.  
Section 15.214 Cordless telephones.

#### Radiated Emission Limits, Additional Provisions

Section 15.215 Additional provisions to the general radiated emission limitations.  
Section 15.217 Operation in the band 160 - 190 kHz.  
Section 15.219 Operation in the band 510 - 1705 kHz.  
Section 15.221 Operation in the band 525 - 1705 kHz.  
Section 15.223 Operation in the band 1.705 - 10 MHz.  
Section 15.225 Operation within the band 13.110 – 14.010 MHz.  
Section 15.227 Operation within the band 26.96 - 27.28 MHz.  
Section 15.229 Operation within the band 40.66 - 40.70 MHz.  
Section 15.231 Periodic operation in the band 40.66 - 40.70 MHz and above 70 MHz.  
Section 15.233 Operation within the bands 43.71 - 44.49 MHz, 46.60 - 46.98 MHz, 48.75 - 49.51 MHz and 49.66 - 50.0 MHz.  
Section 15.235 Operation within the band 49.82 - 49.90 MHz.  
Section 15.237 Operation in the bands 72.0 - 73.0 MHz, 74.6 - 74.8 MHz and 75.2 - 76.0 MHz.  
Section 15.239 Operation in the band 88 - 108 MHz.  
Section 15.240 Operation in the band 433.5-434.5 MHz.  
Section 15.241 Operation in the band 174 - 216 MHz.  
Section 15.242 Operation in the bands 174-216 MHz and 470-668 MHz.  
Section 15.243 Operation in the band 890 - 940 MHz.  
Section 15.245 Operation within the bands 902 - 928 MHz, 2435 - 2465 MHz, 5785 - 5815 MHz, 10500 - 10550 MHz, and 24075 - 24175 MHz.  
Section 15.247 Operation within the bands 902 - 928 MHz, 2400 - 2483.5 MHz, and 5725 - 5850 MHz.  
Section 15.249 Operation within the bands 902 - 928 MHz, 2400 - 2483.5 MHz, 5725 - 5875 MHz, and 24.0 - 24.25 GHz.

Section 15.250 Operation of wideband systems within the band 5925-7250 MHz.  
Section 15.251 Operation within the bands 2.9 - 3.26 GHz, 3.267 - 3.332 GHz, 3.339 - 3.3458 GHz, and 3.358 - 3.6 GHz.  
Section 15.252 Operation of wideband vehicular radar systems within the bands 16.2-17.7 GHz and 23.12-29.0 GHz.  
Section 15.253 Operation within the bands 46.7-46.9 GHz and 76.0-77.0 GHz.  
Section 15.255 Operation within the band 57-64 GHz.  
Section 15.257 Operation within the band 92-95 GHz.

#### Subpart D - Unlicensed Personal Communications Service Devices

Section 15.301 Scope.  
Section 15.303 Definitions.  
Section 15.305 Equipment authorization requirement.  
Section 15.307 Coordination with fixed microwave service.  
Section 15.309 Cross reference.  
Section 15.311 Labelling requirements.  
Section 15.313 Measurement procedures.  
Section 15.315 Conducted limits.  
Section 15.317 Antenna requirement.  
Section 15.319 General technical requirements.  
Section 15.321 [Reserved]  
Section 15.323 Specific requirements for devices operating in the 1920-1930 MHz sub-band.

#### Subpart E - Unlicensed National Information Infrastructure Devices

Section 15.401 Scope.  
Section 15.403 Definitions.  
Section 15.405 Cross reference.  
Section 15.407 General technical requirements.

#### Subpart F – Ultra-Wideband Operation

Section 15.501 Scope.  
Section 15.503 Definitions.  
Section 15.505 Cross reference.  
Section 15.507 Marketing of UWB equipment.  
Section 15.509 Technical requirements for ground penetrating radars and wall imaging systems.  
Section 15.110 Technical requirements for through-wall imaging systems.  
Section 15.511 Technical requirements for surveillance systems.  
Section 15.513 Technical requirements for medical imaging systems.  
Section 15.515 Technical requirements for vehicular radar systems.  
Section 15.517 Technical requirements for indoor UWB systems.  
Section 15.519 Technical requirements for hand held UWB systems.  
Section 15.521 Technical requirements applicable to all UWB devices.  
Section 15.523 Measurement procedures.

Section 15.525 Coordination requirements.

Subpart G – Access Broadband Over Power Line (Access BPL)

Section 15.601 Scope.

Section 15.603 Definitions.

Section 15.605 Cross reference.

Section 15.607 Equipment Authorization of Access BPL equipment

Section 15.609 Marketing of Access BPL equipment

Section 15.611 General technical requirements.

Section 15.613 Measurement Procedures.

Section 15.615 General administrative requirements.

Authority: 47 U.S.C. Sections 154, 302a, 303, 304, 307, 336, and 544A.

## Subpart A - General

### Section 15.1 Scope of this Part.

(a) This Part sets out the regulations under which an intentional, unintentional, or incidental radiator may be operated without an individual license. It also contains the technical specifications, administrative requirements and other conditions relating to the marketing of Part 15 devices.

(b) The operation of an intentional or unintentional radiator that is not in accordance with the regulations in this Part must be licensed pursuant to the provisions of Section 301 of the Communications Act of 1934, as amended, unless otherwise exempted from the licensing requirements elsewhere in this Chapter.

(c) Unless specifically exempted, the operation or marketing of an intentional or unintentional radiator that is not in compliance with the administrative and technical provisions in this Part, including prior Commission authorization or verification, as appropriate, is prohibited under Section 302 of the Communications Act of 1934, as amended, and Subpart I of Part 2 of this Chapter. The equipment authorization and verification procedures are detailed in Subpart J of Part 2 of this Chapter.

### Section 15.3 Definitions.

(a) Auditory assistance device. An intentional radiator used to provide auditory assistance to a handicapped person or persons. Such a device may be used for auricular training in an educational institution, for auditory assistance at places of public gatherings, such as a church, theater, or auditorium, and for auditory assistance to handicapped individuals, only, in other locations.

(b) Biomedical telemetry device. An intentional radiator used to transmit measurements of either human or animal biomedical phenomena to a receiver.

(c) Cable input selector switch. A transfer switch that is intended as a means to alternate between the reception of broadcast signals via connection to an antenna and the reception of cable television service.

(d) Cable locating equipment. An intentional radiator used intermittently by trained operators to locate buried cables, lines, pipes and similar structures or elements. Operation entails coupling a radio frequency signal onto the cable, pipe, etc. and using a receiver to detect the location of that structure or element.

(e) Cable system terminal device (CSTD). A TV interface device that serves, as its primary function, to connect a cable system operated under Part 76 of this Chapter to a TV broadcast receiver or other subscriber premise equipment. Any device which functions as a CSTD in one of its operating modes must comply with the technical requirements for such devices when operating in that mode.

(f) Carrier current system. A system, or part of a system, that transmits radio frequency energy by conduction over the electric power lines. A carrier current system can be designed such that the signals are received by conduction directly from connection to the electric power lines (unintentional

radiator) or the signals are received over-the-air due to radiation of the radio frequency signals from the electric power lines (intentional radiator).

(g) CB receiver. Any receiver that operates in the Personal Radio Services on frequencies allocated for Citizens Band (CB) Radio Service stations, as well as any receiver provided with a separate band specifically designed to receive the transmissions of CB stations in the Personal Radio Services. This includes the following: (1) a CB receiver sold as a separate unit of equipment; 2) the receiver section of a CB transceiver; 3) a converter to be used with any receiver for the purpose of receiving CB transmissions; and, 4) a multiband receiver that includes a band labelled "CB" or "11-meter" in which such band can be separately selected, except that an Amateur Radio Service receiver that was manufactured prior to January 1, 1960, and which includes an 11-meter band shall not be considered to be a CB receiver.

(h) Class A digital device. A digital device that is marketed for use in a commercial, industrial or business environment, exclusive of a device which is marketed for use by the general public or is intended to be used in the home.

(i) Class B digital device. A digital device that is marketed for use in a residential environment notwithstanding use in commercial, business and industrial environments. Examples of such devices include, but are not limited to, personal computers, calculators, and similar electronic devices that are marketed for use by the general public. Note: The responsible party may also qualify a device intended to be marketed in a commercial, business or industrial environment as a Class B device, and in fact is encouraged to do so, provided the device complies with the technical specifications for a Class B digital device. In the event that a particular type of device has been found to repeatedly cause harmful interference to radio communications, the Commission may classify such a digital device as a Class B digital device, regardless of its intended use.

(j) Cordless telephone system. A system consisting of two transceivers, one a base station that connects to the public switched telephone network and the other a mobile handset unit that communicates directly with the base station. Transmissions from the mobile unit are received by the base station and then placed on the public switched telephone network. Information received from the switched telephone network is transmitted by the base station to the mobile unit. Note: The Domestic Public Cellular Radio Telecommunications Service is considered to be part of the switched telephone network. In addition, intercom and paging operations are permitted provided these are not intended to be the primary modes of operation.

(k) Digital device. (Previously defined as a computing device). An unintentional radiator (device or system) that generates and uses timing signals or pulses at a rate in excess of 9,000 pulses (cycles) per second and uses digital techniques; inclusive of telephone equipment that uses digital techniques or any device or system that generates and uses radio frequency energy for the purpose of performing data processing functions, such as electronic computations, operations, transformations, recording, filing, sorting, storage, retrieval, or transfer. A radio frequency device that is specifically subject to an emanation requirement in any other FCC Rule Part or an intentional radiator subject to Subpart C of this Part that contains a digital device is not subject to the standards for digital devices, provided the digital device is used only to enable operation of the radio frequency device and the digital device does not control additional functions or capabilities. Note: Computer terminals and peripherals

that are intended to be connected to a computer are digital devices.

(l) Field disturbance sensor. A device that establishes a radio frequency field in its vicinity and detects changes in that field resulting from the movement of persons or objects within its range.

(m) Harmful interference. Any emission, radiation or induction that endangers the functioning of a radio navigation service or of other safety services or seriously degrades, obstructs or repeatedly interrupts a radiocommunications service operating in accordance with this Chapter.

(n) Incidental radiator. A device that generates radio frequency energy during the course of its operation although the device is not intentionally designed to generate or emit radio frequency energy. Examples of incidental radiators are dc motors, mechanical light switches, etc.

(o) Intentional radiator. A device that intentionally generates and emits radio frequency energy by radiation or induction.

(p) Kit. Any number of electronic parts, usually provided with a schematic diagram or printed circuit board, which, when assembled in accordance with instructions, results in a device subject to the regulations in this Part, even if additional parts of any type are required to complete assembly.

(q) Perimeter protection system. A field disturbance sensor that employs RF transmission lines as the radiating source. These RF transmission lines are installed in such a manner that allows the system to detect movement within the protected area.

(r) Peripheral device. An input/output unit of a system that feeds data into and/or receives data from the central processing unit of a digital device. Peripherals to a digital device include any device that is connected external to the digital device, any device internal to the digital device that connects the digital device to an external device by wire or cable, and any circuit board designed for interchangeable mounting, internally or externally, that increases the operating or processing speed of a digital device, e.g., "turbo" cards and "enhancement" boards. Examples of peripheral devices include terminals, printers, external floppy disk drives and other data storage devices, video monitors, keyboards, interface boards, external memory expansion cards, and other input/output devices that may or may not contain digital circuitry. This definition does not include CPU boards, as defined in paragraph (bb) of this section, even though a CPU board may connect to an external keyboard or other components.

(s) Personal computer. An electronic computer that is marketed for use in the home, notwithstanding business applications. Such computers are considered Class B digital devices. Computers which use a standard TV receiver as a display device or meet all of the following conditions are considered examples of personal computers:

- (1) Marketed through a retail outlet or direct mail order catalog.
- (2) Notices of sale or advertisements are distributed or directed to the general public or hobbyist users rather than restricted to commercial users.
- (3) Operates on a battery or 120 volt electrical supply.

If the responsible party can demonstrate that because of price or performance the computer is not suitable

for residential or hobbyist use, it may request that the computer be considered to fall outside of the scope of this definition for personal computers.

(t) Power line carrier systems. An unintentional radiator employed as a carrier current system used by an electric power utility entity on transmission lines for protective relaying, telemetry, etc. for general supervision of the power system. The system operates by the transmission of radio frequency energy by conduction over the electric power transmission lines of the system. The system does not include those electric lines which connect the distribution substation to the customer or house wiring.

(u) Radio frequency (RF) energy. Electromagnetic energy at any frequency in the radio spectrum between 9 kHz and 3,000,000 MHz.

(v) Scanning receiver. For the purpose of this part, this is a receiver that automatically switches among two or more frequencies in the range of 30 to 960 MHz and that is capable of stopping at and receiving a radio signal detected on a frequency. Receivers designed solely for the reception of the broadcast signals under part 73 of this chapter, for the reception of NOAA broadcast weather band signals, or for operation as part of a licensed service are not included in this definition.

(w) Television (TV) broadcast receiver. A device designed to receive television pictures that are broadcast simultaneously with sound on the television channels authorized under Part 73 of this Chapter.

(x) Transfer switch. A device used to alternate between the reception of over-the-air radio frequency signals via connection to an antenna and the reception of radio frequency signals received by any other method, such as from a TV interface device.

(y) TV interface device. An unintentional radiator that produces or translates in frequency a radio frequency carrier modulated by a video signal derived from an external or internal signal source, and which feeds the modulated radio frequency energy by conduction to the antenna terminals or other non-baseband input connections of a television broadcast receiver. A TV interface device may include a stand-alone RF modulator, or a composite device consisting of an RF modulator, video source and other components devices. Examples of TV interface devices are video cassette recorders and terminal devices attached to a cable system or used with a Master Antenna (including those used for central distribution video devices in apartment or office buildings).

(z) Unintentional radiator. A device that intentionally generates radio frequency energy for use within the device, or that sends radio frequency signals by conduction to associated equipment via connecting wiring, but which is not intended to emit RF energy by radiation or induction.

(aa) Cable ready consumer electronics equipment. Consumer electronics TV receiving devices, including TV receivers, videocassette recorders and similar devices, that incorporate a tuner capable of receiving television signals and an input terminal for receiving cable television service, and are marketed as "cable ready" or "cable compatible." Such equipment shall comply with the technical standards specified in Section 15.118 of this chapter.

(bb) CPU board. A circuit board that contains a microprocessor, or frequency determining circuitry for the microprocessor, the primary function of which is to execute user-provided programming,

but not including: (1) a circuit board that contains only a microprocessor intended to operate under the primary control or instruction of a microprocessor external to such a circuit board; or, (2) a circuit board that is a dedicated controller for a storage or input/output device.

(cc) External radio frequency power amplifier. A device which is not an integral part of an intentional radiator as manufactured and which, when used in conjunction with an intentional radiator as a signal source, is capable of amplifying that signal.

(dd) Test Equipment is defined as equipment that is intended primarily for purposes of performing measurements or scientific investigations. Such equipment includes, but is not limited to, field strength meters, spectrum analyzers, and modulation monitors.

(ee) Radar detector. A receiver designed to signal the presence of radio signals used for determining the speed of motor vehicles. This definition does not encompass the receiver incorporated within a radar transceiver certified under the Commission's rules.

(ff) Access Broadband over Power Line (Access BPL). A carrier current system installed and operated on an electric utility service as an unintentional radiator that sends radio frequency energy on frequencies between 1.705 MHz and 80 MHz over medium voltage lines or over low voltage lines to provide broadband communications and is located on the supply side of the utility service's points of interconnection with customer premises. Access BPL does not include power line carrier systems as defined in Section 15.3(t) of this part or In-House BPL as defined in Section 15.3(gg) of this part.

(gg) In-House Broadband over power line (In-House BPL). A carrier current system, operating as an unintentional radiator, that sends radio frequency energy by conduction over electric power lines that are not owned, operated or controlled by an electric service provider. The electric power lines may be aerial (overhead), underground, or inside the walls, floors or ceilings of user premises. In-House BPL devices may establish closed networks within a user's premises or provide connections to Access BPL networks, or both.

#### Section 15.5 General conditions of operation.

(a) Persons operating intentional or unintentional radiators shall not be deemed to have any vested or recognizable right to continued use of any given frequency by virtue of prior registration or certification of equipment, or, for power line carrier systems, on the basis of prior notification of use pursuant to Section 90.63(g) of this chapter. [Should reference Section 90.35(g).]

(b) Operation of an intentional, unintentional, or incidental radiator is subject to the conditions that no harmful interference is caused and that interference must be accepted that may be caused by the operation of an authorized radio station, by another intentional or unintentional radiator, by industrial, scientific and medical (ISM) equipment, or by an incidental radiator.

(c) The operator of a radio frequency device shall be required to cease operating the device upon notification by a Commission representative that the device is causing harmful interference. Operation shall not resume until the condition causing the harmful interference has been corrected.

(d) Intentional radiators that produce Class B emissions (damped wave) are prohibited.

Section 15.9 Prohibition against eavesdropping.

Except for the operations of law enforcement officers conducted under lawful authority, no person shall use, either directly or indirectly, a device operated pursuant to the provisions of this Part for the purpose of overhearing or recording the private conversations of others unless such use is authorized by all of the parties engaging in the conversation.

Section 15.11 Cross reference.

The provisions of Subparts A, H, I, J and K of Part 2 apply to intentional and unintentional radiators, in addition to the provisions of this Part. Also, a cable system terminal device and a cable input selector switch shall be subject to the relevant provisions of Part 76 of this Chapter.

Section 15.13 Incidental radiators.

Manufacturers of these devices shall employ good engineering practices to minimize the risk of harmful interference.

Section 15.15 General technical requirements.

(a) An intentional or unintentional radiator shall be constructed in accordance with good engineering design and manufacturing practice. Emanations from the device shall be suppressed as much as practicable, but in no case shall the emanations exceed the levels specified in these rules.

(b) Except as follows, an intentional or unintentional radiator must be constructed such that the adjustments of any control that is readily accessible by or intended to be accessible to the user will not cause operation of the device in violation of the regulations. Access BPL equipment shall comply with the applicable standards at the control adjustment that is employed. The measurement report used in support of an application for Certification and the user instructions for Access BPL equipment shall clearly specify the user- or installer-control settings that are required for conformance with these regulations.

(c) Parties responsible for equipment compliance should note that the limits specified in this Part will not prevent harmful interference under all circumstances. Since the operators of Part 15 devices are required to cease operation should harmful interference occur to authorized users of the radio frequency spectrum, the parties responsible for equipment compliance are encouraged to employ the minimum field strength necessary for communications, to provide greater attenuation of unwanted emissions than required by these regulations, and to advise the user as to how to resolve harmful interference problems (for example, see Section 15.105(b)).

Section 15.17 Susceptibility to interference.

(a) Parties responsible for equipment compliance are advised to consider the proximity and the high power of non-Government licensed radio stations, such as broadcast, amateur, land mobile, and non-

geostationary mobile satellite feeder link earth stations, and of U.S. Government radio stations, which could include high-powered radar systems, when choosing operating frequencies during the design of their equipment so as to reduce the susceptibility for receiving harmful interference. Information on non-Government use of the spectrum can be obtained by consulting the Table of Frequency Allocations in § 2.106 of this chapter.

(b) Information on U. S. Government operations can be obtained by contacting: Director, Spectrum Plans and Policy, National Telecommunications and Information Administration, Department of Commerce, Room 4096, Washington, D. C. 20230.

#### Section 15.19 Labelling requirements.

(a) In addition to the requirements in Part 2 of this Chapter, a device subject to certification or verification shall be labelled as follows:

(1) Receivers associated with the operation of a licensed radio service, e.g., FM broadcast under Part 73, land mobile operation under Part 90, etc., shall bear the following statement in a conspicuous location on the device:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the condition that this device does not cause harmful interference.

(2) A stand-alone cable input selector switch, shall bear the following statement in a conspicuous location on the device:

This device is verified to comply with Part 15 of the FCC Rules for use with cable television service.

(3) All other devices shall bear the following statement in a conspicuous location on the device:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

(4) Where a device is constructed in two or more sections connected by wires and marketed together, the statement specified under paragraph (a) of this section is required to be affixed only to the main control unit.

(5) When the device is so small or for such use that it is not practicable to place the statement specified under paragraph (a) of this section on it, the information required by this paragraph shall be placed in a prominent location in the instruction manual or pamphlet supplied to the user or, alternatively, shall be placed on the container in which the device is marketed. However, the FCC identifier or the unique identifier, as appropriate, must be displayed on the device.

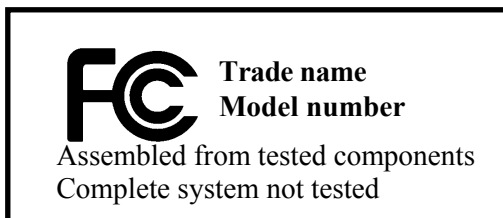
(b) Products subject to authorization under a Declaration of Conformity shall be labelled as follows:

(1) The label shall be located in a conspicuous location on the device and shall contain the unique identification described in Section 2.1074 of this chapter and the following logo:

(i) If the product is authorized based on testing of the product or system; or



(ii) If a personal computer is authorized based on assembly using separately authorized components, in accordance with §15.101(c)(2) or (c)(3), and the resulting product is not separately tested:



(2) Label text and information should be in a size of type large enough to be readily legible, consistent with the dimensions of the equipment and the label. However, the type size for the text is not required to be larger than eight point.

(3) When the device is so small or for such use that it is not practicable to place the statement specified under paragraph (b)(1) of this section on it, such as for a CPU board or a plug-in circuit board peripheral device, the text associated with the logo may be placed in a prominent location in the instruction manual or pamphlet supplied to the user. However, the unique identification (trade name and model number) and the logo must be displayed on the device.

(4) The label shall not be a stick-on, paper label. The label on these products shall be permanently affixed to the product and shall be readily visible to the purchaser at the time of purchase, as described in Section 2.925(d) of this chapter. "Permanently affixed" means that the label is etched, engraved, stamped, silkscreened, indelibly printed, or otherwise permanently marked on a permanently attached part of the equipment or on a nameplate of metal, plastic, or other material fastened to the equipment by welding, riveting, or a permanent adhesive. The label must be designed to last the expected lifetime of the equipment in the environment in which the equipment may be operated and must not be readily detachable.

(c) [reserved]

(d) Consumer electronics TV receiving devices, including TV receivers, videocassette recorders, and similar devices, that incorporate features intended to be used with cable television service, but do not fully comply with the technical standards for cable ready equipment set forth in § 15.118, shall not be marketed with terminology that describes the device as "cable ready" or "cable compatible," or that otherwise conveys the impression that the device is fully compatible with cable service. Factual statements about the various features of a device that are intended for use with cable service or the quality of such features are acceptable so long as such statements do not imply that the device is fully compatible with cable service. Statements relating to product features are generally acceptable where they are limited to one or more specific features of a device, rather than the device as a whole. This requirement applies to consumer TV receivers, videocassette recorders and similar devices manufactured or imported for sale in this country on or after October 31, 1994.

#### Section 15.21 Information to user.

The users manual or instruction manual for an intentional or unintentional radiator shall caution the user that changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. In cases where the manual is provided only in a form other than paper, such as on a computer disk or over the Internet, the information required by this section may be included in the manual in that alternative form, provided the user can reasonably be expected to have the capability to access information in that form.

#### Section 15.23 Home-built devices.

(a) Equipment authorization is not required for devices that are not marketed, are not constructed from a kit, and are built in quantities of five or less for personal use.

(b) It is recognized that the individual builder of home-built equipment may not possess the means to perform the measurements for determining compliance with the regulations. In this case, the builder is expected to employ good engineering practices to meet the specified technical standards to the greatest extent practicable. The provisions of Section 15.5 apply to this equipment.

#### Section 15.25 Kits.

A TV interface device, including a cable system terminal device, which is marketed as a kit shall comply with the following requirements:

(a) All parts necessary for the assembled device to comply with the technical requirements of this Part must be supplied with the kit. No mechanism for adjustment that can cause operation in violation of the requirements of this Part shall be made accessible to the builder.

(b) At least two units of the kit shall be assembled in exact accordance with the instructions supplied with the product to be marketed. If all components required to fully complete the kit (other than those specified in paragraph (a) which are needed for compliance with the technical provisions and must

be included with the kit) are not normally furnished with the kit, assembly shall be made using the recommended components. The assembled units shall be certified or authorized under the Declaration of Conformity procedure, as appropriate, pursuant to the requirements of this Part.

(1) The measurement data required for a TV interface device subject to certification shall be obtained for each of the two units and submitted with an application for certification pursuant to Subpart J of Part 2 of this Chapter.

(2) The measurement data required for a TV interface device subject to Declaration of Conformity shall be obtained for the units tested and retained on file pursuant to the provisions of Subpart J of Part 2 of this Chapter.

(c) A copy of the exact instructions that will be provided for assembly of the device shall be submitted with an application for certification. Those parts which are not normally furnished shall be detailed in the application for equipment authorization.

(d) In lieu of the label required by Section 15.19, the following label, along with the label bearing the FCC identifier and other information specified in Sections 2.925 and 2.926, shall be included in the kit with instructions to the builder that it shall be attached to the completed kit:

(Name of Grantee)

(FCC Identifier)

This device can be expected to comply with Part 15 of the FCC Rules provided it is assembled in exact accordance with the instructions provided with this kit. Operation is subject to the following conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

(e) For the purpose of this Section, circuit boards used as repair parts for the replacement of electrically identical defective circuit boards are not considered to be kits.

#### Section 15.27 Special accessories.

(a) Equipment marketed to a consumer must be capable of complying with the necessary regulations in the configuration in which the equipment is marketed. Where special accessories, such as shielded cables and/or special connectors, are required to enable an unintentional or intentional radiator to comply with the emission limits in this Part, the equipment must be marketed with, i.e., shipped and sold with, those special accessories. However, in lieu of shipping or packaging the special accessories with the unintentional or intentional radiator, the responsible party may employ other methods of ensuring that the special accessories are provided to the consumer, without additional charge, at the time of purchase. Information detailing any alternative method used to supply the special accessories shall be included in the application for a grant of equipment authorization or retained in the verification records, as appropriate. The party responsible for the equipment, as detailed in Section 2.909 of this Chapter, shall ensure that these special accessories are provided with the equipment. The instruction manual for such

devices shall include appropriate instructions on the first page of the text concerned with the installation of the device that these special accessories must be used with the device. It is the responsibility of the user to use the needed special accessories supplied with the equipment. In cases where the manual is provided only in a form other than paper, such as on a computer disk or over the Internet, the information required by this section may be included in the manual in that alternative form, provided the user can reasonably be expected to have the capability to access information in that form.

(b) If a device requiring special accessories is installed by or under the supervision of the party marketing the device, it is the responsibility of that party to install the equipment using the special accessories. For equipment requiring professional installation, it is not necessary for the responsible party to market the special accessories with the equipment. However, the need to use the special accessories must be detailed in the instruction manual, and it is the responsibility of the installer to provide and to install the required accessories.

(c) Accessory items that can be readily obtained from multiple retail outlets are not considered to be special accessories and are not required to be marketed with the equipment. The manual included with the equipment must specify what additional components or accessories are required to be used in order to ensure compliance with this Part, and it is the responsibility of the user to provide and use those components and accessories.

(d) The resulting system, including any accessories or components marketed with the equipment, must comply with the regulations.

#### Section 15.29 Inspection by the Commission.

(a) Any equipment or device subject to the provisions of this Part, together with any certificate, notice of registration or any technical data required to be kept on file by the operator, supplier or party responsible for compliance of the device shall be made available for inspection by a Commission representative upon reasonable request.

(b) The owner or operator of a radio frequency device subject to this Part shall promptly furnish to the Commission or its representative such information as may be requested concerning the operation of the radio frequency device.

(c) The party responsible for the compliance of any device subject to this Part shall promptly furnish to the Commission or its representatives such information as may be requested concerning the operation of the device, including a copy of any measurements made for obtaining an equipment authorization or demonstrating compliance with the regulations.

(d) The Commission, from time to time, may request the party responsible for compliance, including an importer, to submit to the FCC Laboratory in Columbia, Maryland, various equipment to determine that the equipment continues to comply with the applicable standards. Shipping costs to the Commission's Laboratory and return shall be borne by the responsible party. Testing by the Commission will be performed using the measurement procedure(s) that was in effect at the time the equipment was authorized or verified.

Section 15.31 Measurement standards.

(a) The following measurement procedures are used by the Commission to determine compliance with the technical requirements in this part. Except where noted, copies of these procedures are available from the Commission's current duplicating contractor whose name and address are available from the Commission's Consumer and Governmental Affairs Bureau at 1-888-CALL FCC (1-888-225-5322).

(1) FCC/OET MP-2: Measurement of UHF Noise Figures of TV Receivers.

(2) Unlicensed Personal Communication Service (UPCS) devices are to be measured for compliance using ANSI C63.17-1998: "Methods of Measurement of the Electromagnetic and Operational Compatibility of Unlicensed Personal Communications Services (UPCS) Devices", (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38). This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR Part 51.

(3) Other intentional and unintentional radiators are to be measured for compliance using the following procedure excluding sections 4.1.5.2, 5.7, 9 and 14: ANSI C63.4-2003: "Methods of Measurement of Radio-Noise Emissions from Low-Voltage Electrical and Electronic Equipment in the Range of 9 kHz to 40 GHz" (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38). This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR Part 51.

NOTE to Paragraph (a)(3): Digital devices tested to show compliance with the provisions of §§ 15.107(e) and 15.109(g) must be tested following the ANSI C63.4 procedure described in paragraph (a)(3) of this section.

[As stated in the adopting R&O, ANSI C63.4 is not used for measurements below 30 MHz.]

(b) All parties making compliance measurements on equipment subject to the requirements of this part are urged to use these measurement procedures. Any party using other procedures should ensure that such other procedures can be relied on to produce measurement results compatible with the FCC measurement procedures. The description of the measurement procedure used in testing the equipment for compliance and a list of the test equipment actually employed shall be made part of an application for certification or included with the data required to be retained by the party responsible for devices authorized pursuant to a Declaration of Conformity or devices subject to verification.

(c) For swept frequency equipment, measurements shall be made with the frequency sweep stopped at those frequencies chosen for the measurements to be reported.

(d) Field strength measurements shall be made, to the extent possible, on an open field site. Test sites other than open field sites may be employed if they are properly calibrated so that the measurement results correspond to what would be obtained from an open field site. In the case of equipment for which measurements can be performed only at the installation site, such as perimeter protection systems, carrier current systems, and systems employing a "leaky" coaxial cable as an antenna, measurements for verification or for obtaining a grant of equipment authorization shall be performed at a minimum of three installations that can be demonstrated to be representative of typical installation sites.

(e) For intentional radiators, measurements of the variation of the input power or the radiated

signal level of the fundamental frequency component of the emission, as appropriate, shall be performed with the supply voltage varied between 85% and 115% of the nominal rated supply voltage. For battery operated equipment, the equipment tests shall be performed using a new battery.

(f) To the extent practicable, the device under test shall be measured at the distance specified in the appropriate rule section. The distance specified corresponds to the horizontal distance between the measurement antenna and the closest point of the equipment under test, support equipment or interconnecting cables as determined by the boundary defined by an imaginary straight line periphery describing a simple geometric configuration enclosing the system containing the equipment under test. The equipment under test, support equipment and any interconnecting cables shall be included within this boundary.

(1) At frequencies at or above 30 MHz, measurements may be performed at a distance other than what is specified provided: measurements are not made in the near field except where it can be shown that near field measurements are appropriate due to the characteristics of the device; and it can be demonstrated that the signal levels needed to be measured at the distance employed can be detected by the measurement equipment. Measurements shall not be performed at a distance greater than 30 meters unless it can be further demonstrated that measurements at a distance of 30 meters or less are impractical.

When performing measurements at a distance other than that specified, the results shall be extrapolated to the specified distance using an extrapolation factor of 20 dB/decade (inverse linear-distance for field strength measurements; inverse-linear-distance-squared for power density measurements).

(2) At frequencies below 30 MHz, measurements may be performed at a distance closer than that specified in the regulations; however, an attempt should be made to avoid making measurements in the near field. Pending the development of an appropriate measurement procedure for measurements performed below 30 MHz, when performing measurements at a closer distance than specified, the results shall be extrapolated to the specified distance by either making measurements at a minimum of two distances on at least one radial to determine the proper extrapolation factor or by using the square of an inverse linear distance extrapolation factor (40 dB/decade).

(3) The applicant for a grant of certification shall specify the extrapolation method used in the application filed with the Commission. For equipment subject to Declaration of Conformity or verification, this information shall be retained with the measurement data.

(4) When measurement distances of 30 meters or less are specified in the regulations, the Commission will test the equipment at the distance specified unless measurement at that distance results in measurements being performed in the near field. When measurement distances of greater than 30 meters are specified in the regulations, the Commission will test the equipment at a closer distance, usually 30 meters, extrapolating the measured field strength to the specified distance using the methods shown in this Section.

(5) Measurements shall be performed at a sufficient number of radials around the equipment under test to determine the radial at which the field strength values of the radiated emissions are maximized. The maximum field strength at the frequency being measured shall be reported in the equipment authorization report. This paragraph shall not apply to Access BPL equipment on overhead medium voltage lines. In lieu thereof, the measurement guidelines established by the Commission for

Access BPL shall be followed.

(g) Equipment under test shall be adjusted, using those controls that are readily accessible to or are intended to be accessible to the consumer, in such a manner as to maximize the level of the emissions. For those devices to which wire leads may be attached by the consumer, tests shall be performed with wire leads attached. The wire leads shall be of the length to be used with the equipment if that length is known. Otherwise, wire leads one meter in length shall be attached to the equipment. Longer wire leads may be employed if necessary to interconnect to associated peripherals.

(h) For a composite system that incorporates devices contained either in a single enclosure or in separate enclosures connected by wire or cable, testing for compliance with the standards in this part shall be performed with all of the devices in the system functioning. If an intentional radiator incorporates more than one antenna or other radiating source and these radiating sources are designed to emit at the same time, measurements of conducted and radiated emissions shall be performed with all radiating sources that are to be employed emitting. A device which incorporates a carrier current system shall be tested as if the carrier current system were incorporated in a separate device; that is, the device shall be tested for compliance with whatever rules would apply to the device were the carrier current system not incorporated, and the carrier current system shall be tested for compliance with the rules applicable to carrier current systems.

(i) If the device under test provides for the connection of external accessories, including external electrical input signals, the device shall be tested with the accessories attached. The device under test shall be fully exercised with these external accessories. The emission tests shall be performed with the device and accessories configured in a manner that tends to produce maximized emissions within the range of variations that can be expected under normal operating conditions. In the case of multiple accessory external ports, an external accessory shall be connected to one of each type of port. Only one test using peripherals or external accessories that are representative of the devices that will be employed with the equipment under test is required. All possible equipment combinations do not need to be tested. The accessories or peripherals connected to the device being tested shall be unmodified, commercially available equipment.

(j) If the equipment under test consists of a central control unit and an external or internal accessory(ies) (peripheral) and the party verifying the equipment or applying for a grant of equipment authorization manufactures or assembles the central control unit and at least one of the accessory devices that can be used with that control unit, testing of the control unit and/or the accessory(ies) must be performed using the devices manufactured or assembled by that party, in addition to any other needed devices which the party does not manufacture or assemble. If the party verifying the equipment or applying for a grant of equipment authorization does not manufacture or assemble the central control unit and at least one of the accessory devices that can be used with that control unit or the party can demonstrate that the central control unit or accessory(ies) normally would be marketed or used with equipment from a different entity, testing of the central control unit and/or the accessory(ies) must be performed using the specific combination of equipment which is intended to be marketed or used together. Only one test using peripherals or accessories that are representative of the devices that will be employed with the equipment under test is required. All possible equipment combinations are not required to be tested. The accessories or peripherals connected to the device being tested shall be unmodified, commercially available equipment.

(k) A composite system is a system that incorporates different devices contained either in a single enclosure or in separate enclosures connected by wire or cable. If the individual devices in a composite system are subject to different technical standards, each such device must comply with its specific standards. In no event may the measured emissions of the composite system exceed the highest level permitted for an individual component. For digital devices which consist of a combination of Class A and Class B devices, the total combination of which results in a Class A digital device, it is only necessary to demonstrate that the equipment combination complies with the limits for a Class A device. This equipment combination may not be employed for obtaining a grant of equipment authorization or verifying a Class B digital device. However, if the digital device combination consists of a Class B central control unit, e.g., a personal computer, and a Class A internal peripheral(s), it must be demonstrated that the Class B central control unit continues to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device with the Class A internal peripheral(s) installed but not active.

(l) Measurements of radio frequency emissions conducted to the public utility power lines shall be performed using a 50 ohm/50  $\mu$ H line-impedance stabilization network (LISN). Note: Receivers tested under the transition provisions contained in Section 15.37 may be tested with a 50 ohm/5  $\mu$ H LISN.

(m) Measurements on intentional radiators or receivers, other than TV broadcast receivers, shall be performed and, if required, reported for each band in which the device can be operated with the device operating at the number of frequencies in each band specified in the following table:

| Frequency range over which device operates | Number of frequencies | Location in the range of operation          |
|--|-----------------------|---|
| 1 MHz or less                              | 1                     | Middle                                      |
| 1 to 10 MHz                                | 2                     | 1 near top and 1 near bottom                |
| More than 10 MHz                           | 3                     | 1 near top, 1 near middle and 1 near bottom |

(n) Measurements on TV broadcast receivers shall be performed with the receiver tuned to each VHF frequency and also shall include the following oscillator frequencies: 520, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900 and 931 MHz. If measurements cannot be made on one or more of the latter UHF frequencies because of the presence of signals from licensed radio stations or for other reasons to be detailed in the measurement report, measurements shall be made with the receiver oscillator at a nearby frequency. If the receiver is not capable of receiving channels above 806 MHz, the measurements employing the oscillator frequencies 900 and 931 MHz may be omitted.

(o) The amplitude of spurious emissions from intentional radiators and emissions from unintentional radiators which are attenuated more than 20 dB below the permissible value need not be reported unless specifically required elsewhere in this Part.

(p) In those cases where the provisions in this section conflict with the measurement procedures in paragraph (a) of this section and the procedures were implemented after June 23, 1989, the provisions

contained in the measurement procedures shall take precedence.

Section 15.32 Test procedures for CPU boards and computer power supplies.

Power supplies and CPU boards used with personal computers and for which separate authorizations are required to be obtained shall be tested as follows:

(a) CPU boards shall be tested as follows:

(1) Testing for radiated emissions shall be performed with the CPU board installed in a typical enclosure but with the enclosure's cover removed so that the internal circuitry is exposed at the top and on at least two sides. Additional components, including a power supply, peripheral devices, and subassemblies, shall be added, as needed, to result in a complete personal computer system. If the oscillator and the microprocessor circuits are contained on separate circuit boards, both boards, typical of the combination that would normally be employed, must be used in the test. Testing shall be in accordance with the procedures specified in Section 15.31 of this part.

(i) Under these test conditions, the system under test shall not exceed the radiated emission limits specified in Section 15.109 of this part by more than 6 dB. Emissions greater than 6 dB that can be identified and documented to originate from a component(s) other than the CPU board being tested may be dismissed.

[Note - when using the test procedure in (a)(1), this test is mandatory and must be passed. Passing the test in (a)(1)(ii) but failing the test here in (a)(1)(i) signifies a non-compliant product. If compliance can not be shown under (a)(1)(i), see (a)(2) of this section for an alternative test procedure.]

(ii) Unless the test in paragraph (a)(1)(i) of this section demonstrates compliance with the limits in Section 15.109 of this part, a second test shall be performed using the same configuration described above but with the cover installed on the enclosure. Testing shall be in accordance with the procedures specified in Section 15.31 of this part. Under these test conditions, the system under test shall not exceed the radiated emission limits specified in Section 15.109 of this part.

(2) In lieu of the procedure in (a)(1) of this section, CPU boards may be tested to demonstrate compliance with the limits in Section 15.109 using a specified enclosure with the cover installed. Testing for radiated emissions shall be performed with the CPU board installed in a typical system configuration. Additional components, including a power supply, peripheral devices, and subassemblies, shall be added, as needed, to result in a complete personal computer system. If the oscillator and the microprocessor circuits are contained on separate circuit boards, both boards, typical of the combination that would normally be employed, must be used in the test. Testing shall be in accordance with the procedures specified in Section 15.31 of this part. Under this procedure, CPU boards that comply with the limits in Section 15.109 must be marketed together with the specific enclosure used for the test.

(3) The test demonstrating compliance with the AC power line conducted limits specified in Section 15.107 of this part shall be performed in accordance with the procedures specified in Section 15.31 using a enclosure, peripherals, power supply and subassemblies that are typical of the type with which the CPU board under test would normally be employed.

(b) The power supply shall be tested installed in an enclosure that is typical of the type within which it would normally be installed. Additional components, including peripheral devices, a CPU board, and subassemblies, shall be added, as needed, to result in a complete personal computer system. Testing shall be in accordance with the procedures specified in Section 15.31 and must demonstrate compliance with all of the standards contained in this part.

Section 15.33 Frequency range of radiated measurements.

(a) Unless otherwise noted in the specific rule section under which the equipment operates for an intentional radiator the spectrum shall be investigated from the lowest radio frequency signal generated in the device, without going below 9 kHz, up to at least the frequency shown in this paragraph:

(1) If the intentional radiator operates below 10 GHz: to the tenth harmonic of the highest fundamental frequency or to 40 GHz, whichever is lower.

(2) If the intentional radiator operates at or above 10 GHz and below 30 GHz: to the fifth harmonic of the highest fundamental frequency or to 100 GHz, whichever is lower.

(3) If the intentional radiator operates at or above 30 GHz: to the fifth harmonic of the highest fundamental frequency or to 200 GHz, whichever is lower, unless specified otherwise elsewhere in the rules.

(4) If the intentional radiator contains a digital device, regardless of whether this digital device controls the functions of the intentional radiator or the digital device is used for additional control or function purposes other than to enable the operation of the intentional radiator, the frequency range shall be investigated up to the range specified in paragraphs (a)(1)-(a)(3) of this section or the range applicable to the digital device, as shown in paragraph (b)(1) of this Section, whichever is the higher frequency range of investigation.

(b) For unintentional radiators:

(1) Except as otherwise indicated in paragraphs (b)(2) or (b)(3), for an unintentional radiator, including a digital device, the spectrum shall be investigated from the lowest radio frequency signal generated or used in the device, without going below the lowest frequency for which a radiated emission limit is specified, up to the frequency shown in the following table:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Highest frequency generated or<br>used in the device or on which the<br>device operates or tunes (MHz) | Upper frequency of measurement<br>range (MHz) |
|--|---|

---

|             |      |
|-------------|------|
| Below 1.705 | 30   |
| 1.705 - 108 | 1000 |
| 108 - 500   | 2000 |
| 500 - 1000  | 5000 |

Above 1000

5th harmonic of the highest frequency or  
40 GHz, whichever is lower

---

(2) A unintentional radiator, excluding a digital device, in which the highest frequency generated in the device, the highest frequency used in the device and the highest frequency on which the device operates or tunes are less than 30 MHz and which, in accordance with Section 15.109, is required to comply with standards on the level of radiated emissions within the frequency range 9 kHz to 30 MHz, such as a CB receiver or a device designed to conduct its radio frequency emissions via connecting wires or cables, e.g., a carrier current system not intended to radiate, shall be investigated from the lowest radio frequency generated or used in the device, without going below 9 kHz (25 MHz for CB receivers), up to the frequency shown in the following table. If the unintentional radiator contains a digital device, the upper frequency to be investigated shall be that shown in the table below or in the table in paragraph (b)(1) above, as based on both the highest frequency generated and the highest frequency used in the digital device, whichever range is higher.

| Highest frequency generated or used in the device or on which the device operates or tunes (MHz) | Upper frequency of measurement range (MHz) |
|--|--|
| Below 1.705  | 30   |
| 1.705 - 10   | 400  |
| 10 - 30  | 500  |

(3) Except for a CB receiver, a receiver employing superheterodyne techniques shall be investigated from 30 MHz up to at least the second harmonic of the highest local oscillator frequency generated in the device. If such receiver is controlled by a digital device, the frequency range shall be investigated up to the higher of the second harmonic of the highest local oscillator frequency generated in the device or the upper frequency of the measurement range specified for the digital device in paragraph (b)(1) of this Section.

(c) The above specified frequency ranges of measurements apply to the measurement of radiated emissions and, in the case of receivers, the measurement to demonstrate compliance with the antenna conduction limits specified in Section 15.111. The frequency range of measurements for AC power line conducted limits is specified in Sections 15.107 and 15.207 and applies to all equipment subject to those regulations. In some cases, depending on the frequency(ies) generated and used by the equipment, only signals conducted onto the AC power lines are required to be measured.

(d) Particular attention should be paid to harmonics and subharmonics of the fundamental frequency as well as to those frequencies removed from the fundamental by multiples of the oscillator frequency. Radiation at the frequencies of multiplier stages should also be checked.

Section 15.35 Measurement detector functions and bandwidths.

The conducted and radiated emission limits shown in this Part are based on the following, unless otherwise specified elsewhere in this Part:

(a) On any frequency or frequencies below or equal to 1000 MHz, the limits shown are based on measuring equipment employing a CISPR quasi-peak detector function and related measurement bandwidths, unless otherwise specified. The specifications for the measuring instrument using the CISPR quasi-peak detector can be found in Publication 16 of the International Special Committee on Radio Interference (CISPR) of the International Electrotechnical Commission. As an alternative to CISPR quasi-peak measurements, the responsible party, at its option, may demonstrate compliance with the emission limits using measuring equipment employing a peak detector function, properly adjusted for such factors as pulse desensitization, as long as the same bandwidths as indicated for CISPR quasi-peak measurements are employed.

Note: For pulse modulated devices with a pulse-repetition frequency of 20 Hz or less and for which CISPR quasi-peak measurements are specified, compliance with the regulations shall be demonstrated using measuring equipment employing a peak detector function, properly adjusted for such factors as pulse desensitization, using the same measurement bandwidths that are indicated for CISPR quasi-peak measurements.

(b) Unless otherwise specified, on any frequency or frequencies above 1000 MHz, the radiated emission limits are based on the use of measurement instrumentation employing an average detector function. Unless otherwise specified, measurements above 1000 MHz shall be performed using a minimum resolution bandwidth of 1 MHz. When average radiated emission measurements are specified in this part, including average emission measurements below 1000 MHz, there also is a limit on the peak level of the radio frequency emissions. Unless otherwise specified, *e.g.*, see §§ 15.250, 15.252, 15.255, and 15.509-15.519 of this part, the limit on peak radio frequency emissions is 20 dB above the maximum permitted average emission limit applicable to the equipment under test. This peak limit applies to the total peak emission level radiated by the device, *e.g.*, the total peak power level. Note that the use of a pulse desensitization correction factor may be needed to determine the total peak emission level. The instruction manual or application note for the measurement instrument should be consulted for determining pulse desensitization factors, as necessary.

(c) Unless otherwise specified, *e.g.* Section 15.255(b), when the radiated emission limits are expressed in terms of the average value of the emission, and pulsed operation is employed, the measurement field strength shall be determined by averaging over one complete pulse train, including blanking intervals, as long as the pulse train does not exceed 0.1 seconds. As an alternative (provided the transmitter operates for longer than 0.1 seconds) or in cases where the pulse train exceeds 0.1 seconds, the measured field strength shall be determined from the average absolute voltage during a 0.1 second interval during which the field strength is at its maximum value. The exact method of calculating the average field strength shall be submitted with any application for certification or shall be retained in the measurement data file for equipment subject to notification or verification.

#### Section 15.37 Transition provisions for compliance with the rules.

Equipment may be authorized, manufactured and imported under the rules in effect prior to June 23, 1989, in accordance with the following schedules:

(a) For all intentional and unintentional radiators, except for receivers: Radio frequency equipment verified by the responsible party or for which an application for a grant of equipment authorization is submitted to the Commission on or after June 23, 1992, shall comply with the regulations specified in this Part. Radio frequency equipment that is manufactured or imported on or after June 23, 1994, shall comply with the regulations specified in this Part.

(b) For receivers: Receivers subject to the regulations in this Part that are manufactured or imported on or after June 23, 1999, shall comply with the regulations specified in this Part. However, if a receiver is associated with a transmitter that could not have been authorized under the regulations in effect prior to June 23, 1989, e.g., a transmitter operating under the provisions of Sections 15.209 or 15.249 (below 960 MHz), the transition provisions in this Section do not apply. Such receivers must comply with the regulations in this Part. In addition, receivers are subject to the provisions in paragraph (f) of this Section.

(c) There are no restrictions on the operation or marketing of equipment complying with the regulations in effect prior to June 23, 1989.

(d) Prior to May 25, 1991, no person shall import, market or operate intentional radiators within the band 902-905 MHz under the provisions of Section 15.249. Until that date, the Commission will not issue a grant of equipment authorization for equipment operating under Section 15.249 if the equipment is designed to permit operation within the band 902-905 MHz.

(e) For cordless telephones: The manufacture and importation of cordless telephones not complying with Section 15.214(d) of this Part shall cease on or before September 11, 1991. These provisions will not apply to cordless telephones which are repaired or refurbished, or re-imported after repair or refurbishment. Applications for a grant of equipment authorization of cordless telephones not complying with Section 15.214(d) of this Part will not be accepted by the Commission after May 10, 1991. Cordless telephones that have previously received equipment authorization and that, without modification, already comply with the requirements of Section 15.214(d) of this Part, need not be reauthorized.

(f) The manufacture or importation of scanning receivers, and frequency converters designed or marketed for use with scanning receivers, that do not comply with the provisions of § 15.121(a)(1) shall cease on or before April 26, 1994. Effective April 26, 1993, the Commission will not grant equipment authorization for receivers that do not comply with the provisions of § 15.121(a)(1). This paragraph does not prohibit the sale or use of authorized receivers manufactured in the United States, or imported into the United States, prior to April 26, 1994.

(g) For CPU boards and power supplies designed to be used with personal computers: The manufacture and importation of these products shall cease on or before September 17, 1997, unless these products have been authorized under a Declaration of Conformity or a grant of certification, demonstrating compliance with all of the provisions in this Part. Limited provisions, as detailed in Section 15.101(d) of this Chapter, are provided to permit the importation and manufacture of these products subsequent to this date where the CPU boards and/or power supplies are marketed only to personal computer equipment manufacturers.

(h) The manufacture or importation of scanning receivers, and frequency converters designed or marketed for use with scanning receivers, that do not comply with the provisions of § 15.121 shall cease on or before October 25, 1999. Effective July 26, 1999, the Commission will not grant equipment authorization for receivers that do not comply with the provisions of § 15.121. This paragraph does not prohibit the sale or use of authorized receivers manufactured in the United States, or imported into the United States, prior to October 25, 1999.

(i) Effective October 16, 2002, an equipment approval may no longer be obtained for medical telemetry equipment operating under the provisions of § 15.241 or § 15.242. The requirements for obtaining an approval for medical telemetry equipment after this date are found in Subpart H of Part 95 of this chapter.

(j) All radio frequency devices that are authorized under the certification, verification or declaration of conformity procedures on or after July 12, 2004, shall comply with the conducted limits specified in Section 15.107 or Section 15.207 of this part, as appropriate. All radio frequency devices that are manufactured or imported on or after July 11, 2005, shall comply with the conducted limits specified in Section 15.107 or Section 15.207 of this part, as appropriate. Equipment authorized, imported or manufactured prior to these dates shall comply with the conducted limits specified in Section 15.107 or Section 15.207 of this part, as appropriate, or with the conducted limits that were in effect immediately prior to September 9, 2002.

(k) Radar detectors manufactured or imported after August 28, 2002 and marketed after September 27, 2002 shall comply with the regulations specified in this part. Radar detectors manufactured or imported prior to January 27, 2003 may be labeled with the information required by §§ 2.925 and 15.19(a) of this chapter on the individual equipment carton rather than on the device, and are exempt from complying with the requirements of § 15.21.

(l) U-NII equipment operating in the 5.25-5.35 GHz band for which applications for certification are filed on or after July 20, 2006 shall comply with the DFS and TPC requirements specified in Section 15.407 of this part. U-NII equipment operating in the 5.25-5.35 GHz band that are imported or marketed on or after July 20, 2007 shall comply with the DFS and TPC requirements in Section 15.407 of this part.

(m) All Access BPL devices that are manufactured, imported, marketed or installed on or after July 7, 2006 shall comply with the requirements specified in subpart G of this part, including certification of the equipment.

#### Section 15.38 Incorporation by reference.

(a) The materials listed in this section are incorporated by reference in this part. These incorporations by reference were approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. These materials are incorporated as they exist on the date of the approval, and notice of any change in these materials will be published in the Federal Register. The materials are available for purchase at the corresponding addresses noted below, and all are available for inspection at the Office of the Federal Register, 800 North Capitol Street, NW, suite 700, Washington,

DC, at the Reference Information Center, Federal Communications Commission, 445 12th. St., SW, Room CY- A257, Washington, DC 20554.

(b) The following materials are available for purchase from at least one of the following addresses: Global Engineering Documents, 15 Inverness Way East, Englewood, CO 80112 or at <http://global.ihs.com>; or American National Standards Institute, 25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor, New York, NY 10036 or at <http://webstore.ansi.org/ansidocstore/default.asp>; or Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers at <http://www.scte.org/standards/index.cfm>.

(1) SCTE 28 2003 (formerly DVS 295): “Host-POD Interface Standard,” 2003, IBR approved for § 15.123.

(2) SCTE 41 2003 (formerly DVS 301): “POD Copy Protection System,” 2003, IBR approved for § 15.123.

(3) ANSI/SCTE 54 2003 (formerly DVS 241): “Digital Video Service Multiplex and Transport System Standard for Cable Television,” 2003, IBR approved for § 15.123.

(4) ANSI/SCTE 65 2002 (formerly DVS 234): “Service Information Delivered Out-of-Band for Digital Cable Television,” 2002, IBR approved for § 15.123.

(5) SCTE 40 2003 (formerly DVS 313): “Digital Cable Network Interface Standard,” 2003, IBR approved for § 15.123.

(6) ANSI C63.4-2003: “Methods of Measurement of Radio-Noise Emissions from Low-Voltage Electrical and Electronic Equipment in the Range of 9 kHz to 40 GHz,” 2003, IBR approved for § 15.31, except for sections 4.1.5.2, 5.7, 9 and 14.

(7) EIA IS-132: “Cable Television Channel Identification Plan,” 1994, IBR approved for § 15.118.

(8) EIA-608: “Recommended Practice for Line 21 Data Service,” 1994, IBR approved for § 15.120.

(9) EIA-744: “Transport of Content Advisory Information Using Extended Data Service (XDS),” 1997, IBR approved for § 15.120.

(10) EIA-708-B: “Digital Television (DTV) Closed Captioning,” 1999, IBR approved for § 15.122.

(11) Third Edition of the International Special Committee on Radio Interference (CISPR), Pub. 22, “Information Technology Equipment – Radio Disturbance Characteristics – Limits and Methods of Measurement,” 1997, IBR approved for § 15.109.

(12) ANSI C63.17-1998: “Methods of Measurement of the Electromagnetic and Operational Compatibility of Unlicensed Personal Communications Services (UPCS) Devices”, 1998, IBR approved for § 15.31.

(13) EIA-766-A: “U.S. and Canadian Region Rating Tables (RRT) and Content Advisory Descriptors for Transport of Content Advisory Information using ATSC A/65-A Program and System Information Protocol (PSIP),” 2001, IBR approved for §15.120.

(c) The following materials are freely available from at least one of the following addresses: Consumer Electronics Association, 2500 Wilson Blvd., Arlington, VA 22201 or at [http://www.ce.org/public\\_policy](http://www.ce.org/public_policy).

(1) Uni-Dir-PICS-I01-030903: “Uni-Directional Receiving Device: Conformance Checklist: PICS Proforma,” 2003, IBR approved for §15.123.

### Subpart B - Unintentional Radiators

#### Section 15.101 Equipment authorization of unintentional radiators.

(a) Except as otherwise exempted in §§ 15.23, 15.103, and 15.113, unintentional radiators shall be authorized prior to the initiation of marketing, as follows:

| Type of device  | Equipment authorization required             |
|---|--|
| TV broadcast receiver.....  | Verification                                 |
| FM broadcast receiver.....  | Verification                                 |
| CB receiver.....  | Declaration of Conformity or Certification   |
| Superregenerative receiver.....   | Declaration of Conformity or Certification   |
| Scanning receiver.....  | Certification                                |
| Radar detector.....   | Certification                                |
| All other receivers subject to Part 15.....   | Declaration of Conformity or Certification   |
| TV interface device.....  | Declaration of Conformity or Certification   |
| Cable system terminal device.....   | Declaration of Conformity                    |
| Stand-alone cable input selector switch.....  | Verification                                 |
| Class B personal computers and peripherals.....   | Declaration of Conformity or Certification** |
| CPU boards and internal power supplies used with Class B personal computers.....        | Declaration of Conformity or Certification** |
| Class B personal computers assembled using authorized CPU boards or power supplies..... | Declaration of Conformity                    |
| Class B external switching power supplies.....  | Verification                                 |
| Other Class B digital devices & peripherals.....  | Verification                                 |
| Class A digital devices, peripherals & external switching power supplies.....           | Verification                                 |
| Access Broadband over Power Line (Access BPL)   | Certification                                |
| All other devices.....  | Verification                                 |

Note: Where the above table indicates more than one category of authorization for a device, the party responsible for compliance has the option to select the type of authorization.

\*\* Applications for this equipment will no longer be accepted by the Commission once domestic Telecommunication Certification Bodies are available to certify the equipment. See § 2.960.

(b) Only those receivers that operate (tune) within the frequency range of 30-960 MHz, CB receivers and radar detectors are subject to the authorizations shown in paragraph (a) of this section. However, receivers indicated as being subject to Declaration of Conformity that are contained within a transceiver, the transmitter portion of which is subject to certification, shall be authorized under the verification procedure. Receivers operating above 960 MHz or below 30 MHz, except for radar detectors and CB receivers, are exempt from complying with the technical provisions of this part but are subject to § 15.5.

(c) Personal computers shall be authorized in accordance with one of the following methods:

(1) The specific combination of CPU board, power supply and enclosure is tested together and authorized under a Declaration of Conformity or a grant of certification;

(2) The personal computer is authorized under a Declaration of Conformity or a grant of certification, and the CPU board or power supply in that computer is replaced with a CPU board or power supply that has been separately authorized under a Declaration of Conformity or a grant of certification; or,

(3) The CPU board and power supply used in the assembly of a personal computer have been separately authorized under a Declaration of Conformity or a grant of certification.

(4) Personal computers assembled using either of the methods specified in paragraphs (c)(2) or (c)(3) of this section must, by themselves, also be authorized under a Declaration of Conformity if they are marketed. However, additional testing is not required for this Declaration of Conformity, provided the procedures in Section 15.102(b) of this chapter are followed.

(d) Peripheral devices, as defined in Section 15.3(r), shall be authorized under a Declaration of Conformity, or a grant of certification, or verified, as appropriate, prior to marketing. Regardless of the provisions of paragraphs (a) or (c) of this section, if a CPU board, power supply, or peripheral device will always be marketed with a specific personal computer, it is not necessary to obtain a separate authorization for that product provided the specific combination of personal computer, peripheral device, CPU board and power supply has been authorized under a Declaration of Conformity or a grant of certification as a personal computer.

(1) No authorization is required for a peripheral device or a subassembly that is sold to an equipment manufacturer for further fabrication; that manufacturer is responsible for obtaining the necessary authorization prior to further marketing to a vendor or to a user.

(2) Power supplies and CPU boards that have not been separately authorized and are designed for use with personal computers may be imported and marketed only to a personal computer equipment manufacturer that has indicated, in writing, to the seller or importer that they will obtain a Declaration of Conformity or a grant of certification for the personal computer employing these components.

(e) Subassemblies to digital devices are not subject to the technical standards in this part unless they are marketed as part of a system in which case the resulting system must comply with the applicable

regulations. Subassemblies include:

(1) Devices that are enclosed solely within the enclosure housing the digital device, except for: power supplies used in personal computers; devices included under the definition of a peripheral device in Section 15.3(r); and personal computer CPU boards, as defined in Section 15.3(bb);

(2) CPU boards, as defined in Section 15.3(bb), other than those used in personal computers, that are marketed without an enclosure or power supply; and,

(3) Switching power supplies that are separately marketed and are solely for use internal to a device other than a personal computer.

(f) The procedures for obtaining a grant of certification or notification and for verification and a Declaration of Conformity are contained in Subpart J of Part 2 of this chapter. [Notification is no longer used.]

#### Section 15.102 CPU boards and power supplies used in personal computers.

(a) Authorized CPU boards and power supplies that are sold as separate components shall be supplied with complete installation instructions. These instructions shall specify all of the installation procedures that must be followed to ensure compliance with the standards, including, if necessary, the type of enclosure, *e.g.*, a metal enclosure, proper grounding techniques, the use of shielded cables, the addition of any needed components, and any necessary modifications to additional components.

(1) Any additional parts needed to ensure compliance with the standards, except for the enclosure, are considered to be special accessories and, in accordance with Section 15.27 of this part, must be marketed with the CPU board or power supply.

(2) Any modifications that must be made to a personal computer, peripheral device, CPU board or power supply during installation of a CPU board or power supply must be simple enough that they can be performed by the average consumer. Parts requiring soldering, disassembly of circuitry or other similar modifications are not permitted.

(b) Assemblers of personal computer systems employing modular CPU boards and/or power supplies are not required to test the resulting system provided the following conditions are met:

(1) Each device used in the system has been authorized as required under this part (Note: according to Section 15.101(e), some subassemblies used in a personal computer system may not require an authorization);

(2) The original label and identification on each piece of equipment remain unchanged;

(3) Each responsible party's instructions to ensure compliance (including, if necessary, the use of shielded cables or other accessories or modifications) are followed when the system is assembled; and,

(4) If the system is marketed, the resulting equipment combination is authorized under a Declaration of Conformity pursuant to Section 15.101(c)(4) of this part and a compliance information statement, as described in Section 2.1077(b) of this chapter, is supplied with the system. Marketed systems shall also comply with the labelling requirements in Section 15.19 of this part and must be supplied with the information required under Sections 15.21, 15.27 and 15.105 of this part.

(5) The assembler of a personal computer system may be required to test the system and/or make necessary modifications if a system is found to cause harmful interference or to be noncompliant with the appropriate standards in the configuration in which it is marketed (see Sections 2.909, 15.1, 15.27(d) and 15.101(e) of this Chapter).

#### Section 15.103 Exempted devices.

The following devices are subject only to the general conditions of operation in Sections 15.5 and 15.29 and are exempt from the specific technical standards and other requirements contained in this Part. The operator of the exempted device shall be required to stop operating the device upon a finding by the Commission or its representative that the device is causing harmful interference. Operation shall not resume until the condition causing the harmful interference has been corrected. Although not mandatory, it is strongly recommended that the manufacturer of an exempted device endeavor to have the device meet the specific technical standards in this Part.

(a) A digital device utilized exclusively in any transportation vehicle including motor vehicles and aircraft.

(b) A digital device used exclusively as an electronic control or power system utilized by a public utility or in an industrial plant. The term public utility includes equipment only to the extent that it is in a dedicated building or large room owned or leased by the utility and does not extend to equipment installed in a subscriber's facility.

(c) A digital device used exclusively as industrial, commercial, or medical test equipment.

(d) A digital device utilized exclusively in an appliance, e.g., microwave oven, dishwasher, clothes dryer, air conditioner (central or window), etc.

(e) Specialized medical digital devices (generally used at the direction of or under the supervision of a licensed health care practitioner) whether used in a patient's home or a health care facility. Non-specialized medical devices, i.e., devices marketed through retail channels for use by the general public, are not exempted. This exemption also does not apply to digital devices used for record keeping or any purpose not directly connected with medical treatment.

(f) Digital devices that have a power consumption not exceeding 6 nW.

(g) Joystick controllers or similar devices, such as a mouse, used with digital devices but which contain only non-digital circuitry or a simple circuit to convert the signal to the format required (e.g., an integrated circuit for analog to digital conversion) are viewed as passive add-on devices, not themselves directly subject to the technical standards or the equipment authorization requirements.

(h) Digital devices in which both the highest frequency generated and the highest frequency used are less than 1.705 MHz and which do not operate from the AC power lines or contain provisions for operation while connected to the AC power lines. Digital devices that include, or make provision for the use of, battery eliminators, AC adaptors or battery chargers which permit operation while charging or that connect to the AC power lines indirectly, obtaining their power through another device which is connected to the AC power lines, do not fall under this exemption.

(i) Responsible parties should note that equipment containing more than one device is not exempt from the technical standards in this Part unless all of the devices in the equipment meet the criteria for exemption. If only one of the included devices qualifies for exemption, the remainder of the equipment must comply with any applicable regulations. If a device performs more than one function and all of those functions do not meet the criteria for exemption, the device does not qualify for inclusion under the exemptions.

#### Section 15.105 Information to the user.

(a) For a Class A digital device or peripheral, the instructions furnished the user shall include the following or similar statement, placed in a prominent location in the text of the manual:

NOTE: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

(b) For a Class B digital device or peripheral, the instructions furnished the user shall include the following or similar statement, placed in a prominent location in the text of the manual:

NOTE: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

-- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

(c) The provisions of paragraphs (a) and (b) do not apply to digital devices exempted from the technical standards under the provisions of Section 15.103.

(d) For systems incorporating several digital devices, the statement shown in paragraph (a) or (b) needs to be contained only in the instruction manual for the main control unit.

(e) In cases where the manual is provided only in a form other than paper, such as on a computer disk or over the Internet, the information required by this section may be included in the manual in that alternative form, provided the user can reasonably be expected to have the capability to access information in that form.

#### Section 15.107 Conducted limits.

(a) Except for Class A digital devices, for equipment that is designed to be connected to the public utility (AC) power line, the radio frequency voltage that is conducted back onto the AC power line on any frequency or frequencies within the band 150 kHz to 30 MHz shall not exceed the limits in the following table, as measured using a 50  $\mu$ H/50 ohms line impedance stabilization network (LISN). Compliance with the provisions of this paragraph shall be based on the measurement of the radio frequency voltage between each power line and ground at the power terminal. The lower limit applies at the band edges.

| Frequency of Emission (MHz) | Conducted Limit (dB $\mu$ V) |            |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|------------|
|                             | Quasi-peak                   | Average    |
| 0.15-0.5                    | 66 to 56 *                   | 56 to 46 * |
| 0.5-5                       | 56                           | 46         |
| 5-30                        | 60                           | 50         |

\* Decreases with the logarithm of the frequency.

(b) For a Class A digital device that is designed to be connected to the public utility (AC) power line, the radio frequency voltage that is conducted back onto the AC power line on any frequency or frequencies within the band 150 kHz to 30 MHz shall not exceed the limits in the following table, as measured using a 50  $\mu$ H/50 ohms LISN. Compliance with the provisions of this paragraph shall be based on the measurement of the radio frequency voltage between each power line and ground at the power terminal. The lower limit applies at the boundary between the frequency ranges.

| Frequency of Emission (MHz) | Conducted Limit (dB $\mu$ V) |         |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|---------|
|                             | Quasi-peak                   | Average |
| 0.15-0.5                    | 79                           | 66      |
| 0.5-30                      | 73                           | 60      |

(c) The limits shown in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this Section shall not apply to carrier current systems operating as unintentional radiators on frequencies below 30 MHz. In lieu thereof, these carrier current systems shall be subject to the following standards:

(1) For carrier current systems containing their fundamental emission within the frequency band 535-1705 kHz and intended to be received using a standard AM broadcast receiver: no limit on conducted emissions.

(2) For all other carrier current systems: 1000  $\mu$ V within the frequency band 535-1705 kHz, as measured using a 50  $\mu$ H/50 ohms LISN.

(3) Carrier current systems operating below 30 MHz are also subject to the radiated emission limits in Section 15.109(e).

(d) Measurements to demonstrate compliance with the conducted limits are not required for devices which only employ battery power for operation and which do not operate from the AC power lines or contain provisions for operation while connected to the AC power lines. Devices that include, or make provision for, the use of battery chargers which permit operating while charging, AC adaptors or battery eliminators or that connect to the AC power lines indirectly, obtaining their power through another device which is connected to the AC power lines, shall be tested to demonstrate compliance with the conducted limits.

Section 15.109 Radiated emission limits.

(a) Except for Class A digital devices, the field strength of radiated emissions from unintentional radiators at a distance of 3 meters shall not exceed the following values:

| Frequency of Emission<br>(MHz) | Field Strength<br>(microvolts/meter) |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 30 - 88                        | 100                                  |
| 88 - 216                       | 150                                  |
| 216 - 960                      | 200                                  |
| Above 960                      | 500                                  |

(b) The field strength of radiated emissions from a Class A digital device, as determined at a distance of 10 meters, shall not exceed the following:

| Frequency of Emission<br>(MHz) | Field Strength<br>(microvolts/meter) |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 30 - 88                        | 90                                   |

|           |     |
|-----------|-----|
| 88 - 216  | 150 |
| 216 - 960 | 210 |
| Above 960 | 300 |

---

(c) In the emission tables above, the tighter limit applies at the band edges. Sections 15.33 and 15.35 which specify the frequency range over which radiated emissions are to be measured and the detector functions and other measurement standards apply.

(d) For CB receivers, the field strength of radiated emissions within the frequency range of 25 - 30 MHz shall not exceed 40 microvolts/meter at a distance of 3 meters. The field strength of radiated emissions above 30 MHz from such devices shall comply with the limits in paragraph (a).

(e) Carrier current systems used as unintentional radiators or other unintentional radiators that are designed to conduct their radio frequency emissions via connecting wires or cables and that operate in the frequency range of 9 kHz to 30 MHz, including devices that deliver the radio frequency energy to transducers, such as ultrasonic devices not covered under Part 18 of this Chapter, shall comply with the radiated emission limits for intentional radiators provided in Section 15.209 for the frequency range of 9 kHz to 30 MHz. As an alternative, carrier current systems used as unintentional radiators and operating in the frequency range of 525 kHz to 1705 kHz may comply with the radiated emission limits provided in Section 15.221(a). At frequencies above 30 MHz, the limits in paragraph (a), (b) or (g) of this Section, as appropriate, continue to apply.

(f) For a receiver which employs terminals for the connection of an external receiving antenna, the receiver shall be tested to demonstrate compliance with the provisions of this Section with an antenna connected to the antenna terminals unless the antenna conducted power is measured as specified in Section 15.111(a). If a permanently attached receiving antenna is used, the receiver shall be tested to demonstrate compliance with the provisions of this Section.

(g) As an alternative to the radiated emission limits shown in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, digital devices may be shown to comply with the standards contained in Third Edition of the International Special Committee on Radio Interference (CISPR), Pub. 22, "Information Technology Equipment - Radio Disturbance Characteristics - Limits and Methods of Measurement" (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38). In addition:

(1) The test procedure and other requirements specified in this Part shall continue to apply to digital devices.

(2) If, in accordance with Section 15.33 of this Part, measurements must be performed above 1000 MHz, compliance above 1000 MHz shall be demonstrated with the emission limit in paragraph (a) or (b) of this Section, as appropriate. Measurements above 1000 MHz may be performed at the distance specified in the CISPR 22 publications for measurements below 1000 MHz provided the limits in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this Section are extrapolated to the new measurement distance using an inverse linear distance extrapolation factor (20 dB/decade), e.g., the radiated limit above 1000 MHz for a Class B digital device is 150  $\mu$ V/m, as measured at a distance of 10 meters.

(3) The measurement distances shown in CISPR Pub. 22, including measurements made in accordance with this paragraph above 1000 MHz, are considered, for the purpose of Section 15.31(f)(4) of this Part, to be the measurement distances specified in the regulations.

(4) If the radiated emissions are measured to demonstrate compliance with the alternative standards in this paragraph, compliance must also be demonstrated with the conducted limits shown in Section 15.107(e) of this Part. [This rule paragraph was retained by accident in the R&O in ET Docket No. 98-80 and is no longer applicable.]

(h) Radar detectors shall comply with the emission limits in paragraph (a) of this section over the frequency range of 11.7-12.2 GHz.

#### Section 15.111 Antenna power conduction limits for receivers.

(a) In addition to the radiated emission limits, receivers that operate (tune) in the frequency range 30 to 960 MHz and CB receivers that provide terminals for the connection of an external receiving antenna may be tested to demonstrate compliance with the provisions of Section 15.109 with the antenna terminals shielded and terminated with a resistive termination equal to the impedance specified for the antenna, provided these receivers also comply with the following: with the receiver antenna terminal connected to a resistive termination equal to the impedance specified or employed for the antenna, the power at the antenna terminal at any frequency within the range of measurements specified in Section 15.33 shall not exceed 2.0 nanowatts.

(b) CB receivers and receivers that operate (tune) in the frequency range 30 to 960 MHz that are provided only with a permanently attached antenna shall comply with the radiated emission limitations in this Part, as measured with the antenna attached.

#### Section 15.113 Power line carrier systems.

Power line carrier systems, as defined in Section 15.3(t), are subject only to the following requirements:

(a) A power utility operating a power line carrier system shall submit the details of all existing systems plus any proposed new systems or changes to existing systems to an industry-operated entity as set forth in Section 90.63(g) of this Chapter. No notification to the FCC is required. [Section 90.63(g) has been redesignated as Section 90.35(g).]

(b) The operating parameters of a power line carrier system (particularly the frequency) shall be selected to achieve the highest practical degree of compatibility with authorized or licensed users of the radio spectrum. The signals from this operation shall be contained within the frequency band 9 kHz to 490 kHz. A power line carrier system shall operate on an unprotected, non-interference basis in accordance with Section 15.5 of this Part. If harmful interference occurs, the electric power utility shall discontinue use or adjust its power line carrier operation, as required, to remedy the interference. Particular attention should be paid to the possibility of interference to Loran C operations at 100 kHz.

(c) Power line carrier system apparatus shall be operated with the minimum power possible to

accomplish the desired purpose. No equipment authorization is required.

(d) The best engineering principles shall be used in the generation of radio frequency currents by power line carrier systems to guard against harmful interference to authorized radio users, particularly on the fundamental and harmonic frequencies.

(e) Power line carrier system apparatus shall conform to such engineering standards as may be promulgated by the Commission. In addition, such systems should adhere to industry approved standards designed to enhance the use of power line carrier systems.

(f) The provisions of this Section apply only to systems operated by a power utility for general supervision of the power system and do not permit operation on electric lines which connect the distribution substation to the customer or house wiring. Such operation can be conducted under the other provisions of this Part.

#### Section 15.115 TV interface devices, including cable system terminal devices.

(a) Measurements of the radiated emissions of a TV interface device shall be conducted with the output terminal(s) of the device terminated by a resistance equal to the rated output impedance. The emanations of a TV interface device incorporating an intentional radiator shall not exceed the limits in Section 15.109 or Subpart C of this Part, whichever is higher for each frequency. Where it is possible to determine which portion of the device is contributing a particular radio frequency emission, the emissions from the TV interface device portion shall comply with the emission limits in Section 15.109, and the emissions from the intentional radiator shall comply with Subpart C of this Part.

#### (b) Output signal limits:

(1) At any RF output terminal, the maximum measured RMS voltage, in microvolts, corresponding to the peak envelope power of the modulated signal during maximum amplitude peaks across a resistance (R in ohms) matching the rated output impedance of the TV interface device, shall not exceed the following:

(i) For a cable system terminal device or a TV interface device used with a master antenna, 692.8 times the square root of (R) for the video signal and 155 times the square root of (R) for the audio signal.

[At 75 ohms, this is 6000/1342  $\mu$ V; at 300 ohms, this is 12,000/2685  $\mu$ V. There is a 13 dB difference between video and audio levels.]

(ii) For all other TV interface devices, 346.4 times the square root of (R) for the video signal and 77.5 times the square root of (R) for the audio signal.

[At 75 ohms, this is 3000/671  $\mu$ V; at 300 ohms, this is 6000/1342  $\mu$ V.]

(2) At any RF output terminal, the maximum measured RMS voltage, in microvolts, corresponding to the peak envelope power of the modulated signal during maximum amplitude peaks across a resistance (R in ohms) matching the rated output impedance of the TV interface device, of any emission appearing on frequencies removed by more than 4.6 MHz below or 7.4 MHz above the video

carrier frequency on which the TV interface device is operated shall not exceed the following:

(i) For a cable system terminal device or a TV interface device used with a master antenna, 692.8 times the square root of (R).

(ii) For all other TV interface devices, 10.95 times the square root of (R).  
[At 75 ohms, this is 95  $\mu$ V; at 300 ohms, this is 190  $\mu$ V; this represents a 30 dB attenuation.]

(3) The term "master antenna" used in this paragraph refers to TV interface devices employed for central distribution of television or other video signals within a building. Such TV interface devices must be designed to:

(i) Distribute multiple television signals at the same time;

(ii) Distribute such signals by cable to outlets or TV receivers in multiple rooms in the building in which the TV interface devices are installed; and,

(iii) Distribute all over-the-air or cable signals.

Note: Cable-ready video cassette recorders continue to be subject to the provisions for general TV interface devices.

(c) A TV interface device shall be equipped with a transfer switch for connecting the antenna terminals of a receiver selectively either to the receiving antenna or to the radio frequency output of the TV interface device, subject to the following:

(1) When measured in any of its set positions, transfer switches shall comply with the following requirements:

(i) For a cable system terminal device or a TV interface device equipped for use with a cable system or a master antenna, as defined in paragraph (b)(3) of this section, the isolation between the antenna and cable input terminals shall be at least 80 dB from 54 MHz to 216 MHz, at least 60 dB from 216 MHz to 550 MHz and at least 55 dB from 550 MHz to 806 MHz. The 80 dB standard applies at 216 MHz and the 60 dB standard applies at 550 MHz. In the case of a transfer switch requiring a power source, the required isolation shall be maintained in the event the device is not connected to a power source or power is interrupted. The provisions of this sub-paragraph regarding frequencies in the range 550 MHz to 806 MHz are effective June 30, 1997.

(ii) For all other TV interface devices, the maximum voltage, corresponding to the peak envelope power of the modulated video signal during maximum amplitude peaks, in microvolts, appearing at the receiving antenna input terminals when terminated with a resistance (R in ohms) matching the rated impedance of the antenna input of the switch, shall not exceed 0.346 times the square root of (R).

(iii) Measurement to determine compliance with the transfer switch limits shall be made using a connecting cable, where required, between the TV interface device and the transfer

switch of the type and length 1) provided with the TV interface device, 2) recommended in the instruction manual, or 3) normally employed by the consumer.

(2) A TV interface device shall be designed and constructed, to the extent practicable, so as to preclude the possibility that the consumer may inadvertently attach the output of the device to the receiving antenna, if any, without first going through the transfer switch.

(3) A transfer switch is not required for a TV interface device that, when connected, results in the user no longer having any need to receive standard over-the-air broadcast signals via a separate antenna. A transfer switch is not required to be marketed with a cable system terminal device unless that device provides for the connection of an external antenna. A transfer switch is not required for a device that is intended to be used as an accessory to an authorized TV interface device.

(4) An actual transfer switch is not required for a TV interface device, including a cable system terminal device, that has an antenna input terminal(s); provided, the circuitry following the antenna input terminal(s) has sufficient bandwidth to allow the reception of all TV broadcast channels authorized under Part 73 of this Chapter and: for a cable system terminal device that can alternate between the reception of cable television service and an antenna, compliance with the isolation requirement specified in paragraph (c)(1)(i) can be demonstrated; and, for all other TV interface devices, the maximum voltage appearing at the antenna terminal(s) does not exceed the limit in paragraph (c)(1)(ii).

(5) If a transfer switch is not required, the following label shall be used in addition to the label shown in Section 15.19(a):

This device is intended to be attached to a receiver that is not used to receive over-the-air broadcast signals. Connection of this device in any other fashion may cause harmful interference to radio communications and is in violation of the FCC Rules, Part 15.

(d) A TV interface device, including a cable system terminal device, shall incorporate circuitry to automatically prevent emanations from the device from exceeding the technical specifications in this Part. These circuits shall be adequate to accomplish their functions when the TV interface device is presented, if applicable, with video input signal levels in the range of one to five volts; this requirement is not applicable to a TV interface device that uses a built-in signal source and has no provisions for the connection of an external signal source. For devices that contain provisions for an external signal source but do not contain provisions for the input of an external baseband signal, e.g., some cable system terminal devices, compliance with the provisions of this paragraph shall be demonstrated with a radio frequency input signal of 0 to 25 dBmV.

(e) For cable system terminal devices and TV interface devices used with a master antenna, as defined in paragraph (b)(3), the holder of the grant of authorization shall specify in the instruction manual or pamphlet, if a manual is not provided, the types of wires or coaxial cables necessary to ensure that the unit complies with the requirements of this Part. The holder of the grant of authorization must comply with the provisions of Section 15.27. For all other TV interface devices, the wires or coaxial cables used to couple the output signals to the TV receiver shall be provided by the responsible party.

(f) A TV interface device which is submitted to the Commission as a composite device in a single enclosure containing a RF modulator, video source and other component devices shall be submitted on a single application (FCC Form 731) and shall be authorized as a single device.

(g) An external device or accessory that is intended to be attached to a TV interface device shall comply with the technical and administrative requirements set out in the rules under which it operates. For example, a personal computer must be certificated to show compliance with the regulations for digital devices.

(h) Stand-alone switches used to alternate between cable service and an antenna shall provide isolation between the antenna and cable input terminals that is at least 80 dB from 54 MHz to 216 MHz, at least 60 dB from 216 MHz to 550 MHz and at least 55 dB from 550 MHz to 806 MHz. The 80 dB standard applies at 216 MHz and the 60 dB standard applies at 550 MHz. In the case of stand-alone switches requiring a power source, the required isolation shall be maintained in the even the device is not connected to a power source or power is interrupted. The provisions of this paragraph are effective June 30, 1997.

(i) Switches and other devices intended to be used to by-pass the processing circuitry of a cable system terminal device, whether internal to such a terminal device or a stand-alone unit, shall not attenuate the input signal more than 6 dB from 54 MHz to 550 MHz, or more than 8 dB from 550 MHz to 804 MHz. The 6 dB standard applies at 550 MHz. The provisions of this paragraph are applicable June 30, 1997.

#### Section 15.117 TV broadcast receivers.

(a) All TV broadcast receivers shipped in interstate commerce or imported from any foreign country into the United States for sale or resale to the public, shall comply with the provisions of this section, except that paragraphs (f) and (g) shall not apply to the features of such sets that provide for reception of digital television signals. The reference in this section to TV broadcast receivers also includes devices, such as TV interface devices, that incorporate the tuner portion of a TV broadcast receiver and that are equipped with an antenna or antenna terminals that can be used for the off-the-air reception of TV broadcast signals, as authorized under Part 73 of this Chapter.

(b) TV broadcast receivers shall be capable of adequately receiving all channels allocated by the Commission to the television broadcast service.

(c) On a given receiver, use of the UHF and VHF tuning systems shall provide approximately the same degree of tuning accuracy with approximately the same expenditure of time and effort: Provided, however, that this requirement will be considered to be met if the need for routine fine tuning is eliminated on UHF channels.

(1) Basic tuning mechanism. If a TV broadcast receiver is equipped to provide for repeated access to VHF television channels at discrete tuning positions, that receiver shall be equipped to provide for repeated access to a minimum of six UHF television channels at discrete tuning positions. Unless a discrete tuning position is provided for each channel allocated to UHF television, each position

shall be readily adjustable to a particular UHF channel by the user without the use of tools. If 12 or fewer discrete tuning positions are provided, each position shall be adjustable to receive any channel allocated to UHF television.

Note: The combination of detented rotary switch and pushbutton controls is acceptable, provided UHF channels, after their initial selection, can be accurately tuned with an expenditure of time and effort approximately the same as that used in accurately tuning VHF channels. A UHF tuning system comprising five pushbuttons and a separate manual tuning knob is considered to provide repeated access to six channels at discrete tuning positions. A one-knob (VHF/UHF) tuning system providing repeated access to 11 or more discrete tuning positions is also acceptable, provided each of the tuning positions is readily adjustable, without the use of tools, to receive any UHF channel.

(2) Tuning controls and channel readout. UHF tuning controls and channel readout on a given receiver shall be comparable in size, location, accessibility and legibility to VHF controls and readout on that receiver.

Note: Differences between UHF and VHF channel readout that follow directly from the larger number of UHF television channels available are acceptable if it is clear that a good faith effort to comply with the provisions of this Section has been made.

(d) If equipment and controls that tend to simplify, expedite or perfect the reception of television signals (e. g., AFC, visual aids, remote control, or signal seeking capability referred to generally as tuning aids) are incorporated into the VHF portion of a TV broadcast receiver, tuning aids of the same type and comparable capability and quality shall be provided for the UHF portion of that receiver.

(e) If a television receiver has an antenna affixed to the VHF antenna terminals, it must have an antenna designed for and capable of receiving all UHF television channels affixed to the UHF antenna terminals. If a VHF antenna is provided with but not affixed to a receiver, a UHF antenna shall be provided with the receiver.

(f) The picture sensitivity of a TV broadcast receiver averaged for all channels between 14 and 69 inclusive shall not be more than 8 dB larger than the peak picture sensitivity of that receiver averaged for all channels between 2 and 13 inclusive.

(g) The noise figure for any television channel 14 to 69 inclusive shall not exceed 14 dB. A TV receiver model is considered to comply with this noise figure if the maximum noise figure for channels 14-69 inclusive of 97.5% of all receivers within that model does not exceed 14 dB.

(1) The responsible party shall measure the noise figure of a number of UHF channels of the test sample to give reasonable assurance that the UHF noise figure for each channel complies with the above limit.

(2) The responsible party shall insert in his files a statement explaining the basis on which it will rely to ensure that at least 97.5% of all production units of the test sample that are manufactured have a noise figure of no greater than 14 dB.

(3) [Reserved.]

(4) In the case of a TV tuner built-in as part of a video tape recorder that uses a power splitter between the antenna terminals of the video tape recorder and the input terminals of the TV tuner or a TV broadcast receiver that uses a power splitter between the antenna terminals of two or more UHF tuners contained within that receiver, 4 dB may be subtracted from the noise figure measured at the antenna terminals of the video tape recorder or TV broadcast receiver for determining compliance of the UHF tuner(s) with the 14 dB noise figure limit.

(h) Digital television reception capability. TV broadcast receivers are required to provide useable picture and sound commensurate with their video and audio capabilities when receiving digital television signals.

(i) Digital television reception capability implementation schedule.

(1) Responsible parties, as defined in Section 2.909 of this chapter, are required to equip new TV broadcast receivers that are shipped in interstate commerce or imported from any foreign country into the United States and for which they are responsible to comply with the provisions of this section in accordance with the following schedule:

- Receivers with screen sizes 36" and above – 50% of all of a responsible party's units must include DTV tuners effective July 1, 2004; 100% of such units must include DTV tuners effective July 1, 2005.
- Receivers with screen sizes 25" to less than 36" – 50% of all of a responsible party's units must include DTV tuners effective July 1, 2005; 100% of such units must include DTV tuners effective March 1, 2006.
- Receivers with screen sizes less than 25" – 100% of all such units must include DTV tuners effective March 1, 2007.
- Other devices (videocassette recorders (VCRs), digital video disk and digital versatile disk (DVD) players/recorders, etc.) that receive television signals – 100% of all such units must include DTV tuners effective March 1, 2007.

The requirement to include digital television reception capability in new TV broadcast receivers does not apply to devices such as mobile telephones and personal digital assistants where such devices do not include the capability to receive TV service on the frequencies allocated for broadcast television service.

(2) For purposes of this implementation schedule, screen sizes are to be measured diagonally across the picture viewing area. The requirement for equipping new TV broadcast receivers with DTV reception capability does not apply to units with integrated tuners/displays that have screen sizes measuring less than 7.8 inches vertically, *i.e.*, the vertical measurement of a screen in the 4:3 aspect ratio that measures 13" diagonally across the picture viewing area. [This last sentence is wrong and should be deleted in a future correction.]

(3) Responsible parties may include combinations of DTV monitors and set-top DTV tuners in meeting the required percentages of units with a DTV tuner if such combinations are marketed together with a single price.

(j) For a TV broadcast receiver equipped with a cable input selector switch, the selector switch shall provide, in any of its set positions, isolation between the antenna and cable input terminals of at least 80 dB from 54 MHz to 216 MHz, at least 60 dB from 216 MHz to 550 MHz and at least 55 dB from 550 MHz to 806 MHz. The 80 dB standard applies at 216 MHz and the 60 dB standard applies at 550 MHz. In the case of a selector switch requiring a power source, the required isolation shall be maintained in the event the device is not connected to a power source or power is interrupted. An actual switch that can alternate between reception of cable television service and an antenna is not required for a TV broadcast receiver, provided compliance with the isolation requirement specified in this paragraph can be demonstrated and the circuitry following the antenna input terminal(s) has sufficient bandwidth to allow the reception of all TV broadcast channels authorized under this chapter. The provisions of this paragraph regarding frequencies in the range 550 MHz to 806 MHz are effective June 30, 1997.

(k) The following requirements apply to all responsible parties, as defined in §2.909 of this chapter, and any person that displays or offers for sale or rent television receiving equipment that is not capable of receiving, decoding and tuning digital signals.

(1) Such parties and persons shall place conspicuously and in close proximity to such television broadcast receivers a sign containing, in clear and conspicuous print, the Consumer Alert disclosure text required by subparagraph (3). The text should be in a size of type large enough to be clear, conspicuous and readily legible, consistent with the dimensions of the equipment and the label. The information may be printed on a transparent material and affixed to the screen, if the receiver includes a display, in a manner that is removable by the consumer and does not obscure the picture, or, if the receiver does not include a display, in a prominent location on the device, such as on the top or front of the device, when displayed for sale, or the information in this format may be displayed separately immediately adjacent to each television broadcast receiver offered for sale and clearly associated with the analog-only model to which it pertains.

(2) If such parties and persons display or offer for sale or rent such television broadcast receivers via direct mail, catalog, or electronic means, they shall prominently display in close proximity to the images or descriptions of such television broadcast receivers, in clear and conspicuous print, the Consumer Alert disclosure text required by subparagraph (3). The text should be in a size large enough to be clear, conspicuous, and readily legible, consistent with the dimensions of the advertisement or description.

(3) “CONSUMER ALERT

This television receiver has only an analog broadcast tuner and will require a converter box after February 17, 2009, to receive over-the-air broadcasts with an antenna because of the Nation’s transition to digital broadcasting. Analog-only TVs should continue to work as before with cable and satellite TV services, gaming consoles, VCRs, DVD players, and similar products. For more information, call the Federal Communications Commission at 1-888-225-5322 (TTY: 1-888-835-5322) or visit the Commission’s digital television website at: [www.dtv.gov](http://www.dtv.gov).”

Section 15.118 Cable ready consumer electronics equipment.

(a) All consumer electronics TV receiving equipment marketed in the United States as cable ready or cable compatible shall comply with the provisions of this section. Consumer electronics TV receiving equipment that includes features intended for use with cable service but does not fully comply with the provisions of this section are subject to the labelling requirements of Section 15.19(d).

(b) Cable ready consumer electronics equipment shall be capable of receiving all NTSC or similar video channels on channels 1 through 125 of the channel allocation plan set forth in EIA IS-132: "Cable Television Channel Identification Plan" (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38).

(c) Cable ready consumer electronics equipment must meet the following technical performance requirements. Compliance with these requirements shall be determined by performing measurements at the unfiltered IF output port. Where appropriate, the Commission will consider allowing alternative measurement methods.

(1) Adjacent channel interference. In the presence of a lower adjacent channel CW signal that is 1.5 MHz below the desired visual carrier in frequency and 10 dB below the desired visual carrier in amplitude, spurious signals within the IF passband shall be attenuated at least 55 dB below the visual carrier of the desired signal. The desired input signal shall be an NTSC visual carrier modulated with a 10 IRE flat field with color burst and the aural carrier which is 10 dB below the visual carrier should be unmodulated. Measurements are to be performed for input signal levels of 0 dBmV and +15 dBmV, with the receiver tuned to ten evenly spaced channels covering the band 54 MHz to 804 MHz.

(2) Image channel interference. Image channel interference within the IF passband shall be attenuated below the visual carrier of the desired channel by at least 60 dB from 54 MHz to 714 MHz and 50 dB from 714 MHz to 804 MHz. The 60 dB standard applies at 714 MHz. In testing for compliance with this standard, the desired input signal is to be an NTSC signal on which the visual carrier is modulated with a 10 IRE flat field with color burst and the aural carrier is unmodulated and 10 dB below the visual carrier. The undesired test signal shall be a CW signal equal in amplitude to the desired visual carrier and located 90 MHz above the visual carrier frequency of the desired channel. Measurements shall be performed for input signals of 0 dBmV and +15 dBmV, with the receiver tuned to at least ten evenly spaced EIA IS-132 channels covering the band 54 MHz to 804 MHz.

(3) Direct pickup interference. The direct pickup (DPU) of a co-channel interfering ambient field by a cable ready device shall not exceed the following criteria. The ratio of the desired to undesired signal levels at the IF passband on each channel shall be at least 45 dB. The average ratio over the six channels shall be at least 50 dB. The desired input signal shall be an NTSC signal having a visual carrier level of 0 dBmV. The visual carrier is modulated with a 10 IRE flat field with color burst, visual to aural carrier ratio of 10 dB, aural carrier unmodulated. The equipment under test (EUT) shall be placed on a rotatable table that is one meter in height. Any excess length of the power cord and other connecting leads shall be coiled on the floor under the table. The EUT shall be immersed in a horizontally polarized uniform CW field of 100 mV/m at a frequency 2.55 MHz above the visual carrier of the EUT tuned channel. Measurements shall be made with the EUT tuned to six EIA IS-132 channels, two each in the low VHF, high VHF and UHF broadcast bands. On each channel, the levels at the IF passband due to the desired and interfering signals are to be measured.

(4) Tuner overload. Spurious signals within the IF passband shall be attenuated at least 55 dB below the visual carrier of the desired channel using a comb-like spectrum input with each visual signal individually set at +15 dBmV from 54 to 550 MHz. The desired input signal is to be an NTSC signal on which the visual carrier is modulated with a 10 IRE flat field with color burst and the aural carrier is unmodulated and 10 db below the visual carrier. Measurements shall be made with the receiver tuned to at least seven evenly spaced EIA IS-132 channels covering the band 54 MHz to 550 MHz. In addition, spurious signals within the IF passband shall be attenuated at least 51 dB below the visual carrier of the desired channel using a comb spectrum input with each signal individually set at +15 dBmV from 550 to 804 MHz. Measurements shall be made with the receiver tuned to at least three evenly spaced EIA IS-132 channels covering the band 550 MHz to 804 MHz.

(5) Cable input conducted emissions.

(i) Conducted spurious emissions that appear at the cable input to the device must meet the following criteria. The input shall be an NTSC video carrier modulated with a 10 IRE flat field with color burst at a level of 0 dBmV and with a visual to aural ratio of 10 dB. The aural carrier shall be unmodulated. The peak level of the spurious signals will be measured using a spectrum analyzer connected by a directional coupler to the cable input of the equipment under test. Spurious signal levels must not exceed the limits in the following table:

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| From 54 MHz up to and including 300 MHz  | -26 dBmV |
| From 300 MHz up to and including 450 MHz | -20 dBmV |
| From 450 MHz up to and including 804 MHz | -15 dBmV |

(ii) The average of the measurements on multiple channels from 450 MHz up to and including 804 MHz shall be no greater than -20 dBmV. Measurements shall be made with the receiver tuned to at least four EIA IS-132 channels in each of the above bands. The test channels are to be evenly distributed across each of the bands. Measurements for conducted emissions caused by sources internal to the device are to be made in a shielded room. Measurements for conducted emissions caused by external signal sources shall be made in an ambient RF field whose field strength is 100 mV/m, following the same test conditions as described in paragraph (c)(3) of this section.

(d) The field strength of radiated emissions from cable ready consumer electronics equipment shall not exceed the limits in Section 15.109(a) when measured in accordance with the applicable procedures specified in Sections 15.31 and 15.35 for unintentional radiators, with the following modifications. During testing the NTSC input signal level is to be +15 dBmV, with a visual to aural ratio of 10 dB. The visual carrier is to be modulated by a 10 IRE flat field with color burst; the aural carrier is to be unmodulated. Measurements are to be taken on six EIA IS-132 channels evenly spaced across the required RF input range of the equipment under test.

Note: The provisions of paragraphs (a) through (d) of this section are applicable as of June 30, 1997.

Section 15.119 Closed caption decoder requirements for analog television receivers.

(a) Effective July 1, 1993, all TV broadcast receivers with picture screens 13 inches or larger in

diameter shipped in interstate commerce, manufactured, assembled, or imported from any foreign country into the United States shall comply with the provisions of this section.

NOTE: This paragraph places no restriction on the shipping or sale of television receivers that were manufactured before July 1, 1993.

(b) Transmission format. Closed-caption information is transmitted on line 21 of field 1 of the vertical blanking interval of television signals, in accordance with Section 73.682(a)(22) of this Chapter.

(c) Operating modes. The television receiver will employ customer-selectable modes of operation for TV and Caption. A third mode of operation, Text, may be included on an optional basis. The Caption and Text Modes may contain data in either of two operating channels, referred to in this document as C1 and C2. The television receiver must decode both C1 and C2 captioning, and must display the captioning for whichever channel the user selects. The TV Mode of operation allows the video to be viewed in its original form. The Caption and Text Modes define one or more areas (called "boxes") on the screen within which caption or text characters are displayed.

NOTE: For more information regarding Text mode, see "Television Captioning for the Deaf: Signal and Display Specifications", Engineering Report No. E-7709-C, Public Broadcasting Service, dated May 1980, and "TeleCaption II Decoder Module Performance Specification", National Captioning Institute, Inc., dated November 1985. These documents are available, respectively, from the Public Broadcasting Service, 1320 Braddock Place, Alexandria, VA 22314 and from the National Captioning Institute, Inc., 5203 Leesburg Pike, Falls Church, VA 22041.

(d) Screen format. The display area for captioning and text shall fall approximately within the safe caption area as defined in paragraph (n)(12) of this section. This display area will be further divided into 15 character rows of equal height and 32 columns of equal width, to provide accurate placement of text on the screen. Vertically, the display area begins on line 43 and is 195 lines high, ending on line 237 on an interlaced display. All captioning and text shall fall within these established columns and rows. The characters must be displayed clearly separated from the video over which they are placed. In addition, the user must have the capability to select a black background over which the captioned letters are displayed.

(1) Caption mode. In the Caption Mode, text can appear on up to 4 rows simultaneously anywhere on the screen within the defined display area. In addition, a solid space equal to one column width may be placed before the first character and after the last character of each row to enhance legibility. The caption area will be transparent anywhere that either:

(i) No standard space character or other character has been addressed and no accompanying solid space is needed; or,

(ii) An accompanying solid space is used and a "transparent space" special character has been addressed which does not immediately precede or follow a displayed character.

(2) [Reserved]

(e) Presentation format. In analyzing the presentation of characters, it is convenient to think in

terms of a non-visible cursor which marks the screen position at which the next event in a given mode and data channel will occur. The receiver remembers the cursor position for each mode even when data are received for a different address in an alternate mode or data channel.

(1) Screen addressing. Two kinds of control codes are used to move the cursor to specific screen locations. In Caption Mode, these addressing codes will affect both row and column positioning. In Text Mode, the codes affect only column positioning. In both modes, the addressing codes are optional. Default positions are defined for each mode and style when no addressing code is provided.

(i) The first type of addressing code is the Preamble Address Code (PAC). It assigns a row number and one of eight "indent" figures. Each successive indent moves the cursor four columns to the right (starting from the left margin). Thus, an indent of 0 places the cursor at Column 1, an indent of 4 sets it at Column 5, etc. The PAC indent is non-destructive to displayable characters. It will not affect the display to the left of the new cursor position on the indicated row. Note that Preamble Address Codes also set initial attributes for the displayable characters which follow. See paragraph (h) of this section and the Preamble Address Code table.

(ii) The second type of addressing code is the Tab Offset, which is one of three Miscellaneous Control Codes. Tab Offset will move the cursor one, two, or three columns to the right. The character cells skipped over will be unaffected; displayable characters in these cells, if any, will remain intact while empty cells will remain empty, in the same manner that a PAC indent is non-destructive.

(f) Caption mode. There are three styles of presenting text in Caption Mode: roll-up, pop-on, and paint-on. Character display varies significantly with the style used, but certain rules of character erasure are common to all styles. A character can be erased by addressing another character to the same screen location or by backspacing over the character from a subsequent location on the same row. The entire displayed memory will be erased instantly by receipt of an Erase Displayed Memory command. Both displayed memory and non-displayed memory will be entirely erased simultaneously by either: the user switching receiver channels or data channels (C1/C2) or fields (F1/F2) in decoders so equipped; the loss of valid data (see paragraph (j) of this section); or, selecting non-captioning receiver functions which use the display memory of the decoder. Receipt of an End of Caption command will cause a displayed caption to become non-displayed (and vice versa) without being erased from memory. Changing the receiver to a non-captioning mode which does not require use of the decoder's display memory will leave that memory intact, and the decoder will continue to process data as if the caption display were selected.

(1) Roll-up. Roll-up style captioning is initiated by receipt of one of three Miscellaneous Control Codes that determine the maximum number of rows displayed simultaneously, either 2, 3 or 4 contiguous rows. These are the three Roll-Up Caption commands.

(i) The bottom row of the display is known as the "base row". The cursor always remains on the base row. Rows of text roll upwards into the contiguous rows immediately above the base row to create a "window" 2 to 4 rows high.

(ii) The Roll-up command, in normal practice, will be followed (not necessarily

immediately) by a Preamble Address Code indicating the base row and the horizontal indent position. If no Preamble Address Code is received, the base row will default to Row 15 or, if a roll-up caption is currently displayed, to the same base row last received, and the cursor will be placed at Column 1. If the Preamble Address Code received contains a different base row than that of a currently displayed caption, the entire window will move intact (and without erasing) to the new base row immediately.

(iii) Each time a Carriage Return is received, the text in the top row of the window is erased from memory and from the display or scrolled off the top of the window. The remaining rows of text are each rolled up into the next highest row in the window, leaving the base row blank and ready to accept new text. This roll-up must appear smooth to the user, and must take no more than 0.433 seconds to complete. The cursor is automatically placed at Column 1 (pending receipt of a Preamble Address Code).

(iv) Increasing or decreasing the number of roll-up rows instantly changes the size of the active display window, appropriately turning on or off the display of the top one or two rows. A row which is turned off should also be erased from memory.

(v) Characters are always displayed immediately when received by the receiver. Once the cursor reaches the 32nd column position on any row, all subsequent characters received prior to a Carriage Return, Preamble Address Code, or Backspace will be displayed in that column replacing any previous character occupying that address.

(vi) The cursor moves automatically one column to the right after each character or Mid-Row Code received. A Backspace will move the cursor one column to the left, erasing the character or Mid-Row Code occupying that location. (A Backspace received when the cursor is in Column 1 will be ignored.)

(vii) The Delete to End of Row command will erase from memory any characters or control codes starting at the current cursor location and in all columns to its right on the same row. If no displayable characters remain on the row after the Delete to End of Row is acted upon, the solid space (if any) for that row should also be erased to conform with the following provisions.

(viii) If a solid space is used for legibility, it should appear when the first displayable character (not a transparent space) or Mid-Row Code is received on a row, not when the Preamble Address Code, if any, is given. A row on which there are no displayable characters or Mid-Row Codes will not display a solid space, even when rolled up between two rows which do display a solid space.

(ix) If the reception of data for a row is interrupted by data for the alternate data channel or for Text Mode, the display of caption text will resume from the same cursor position if a Roll-Up Caption command is received and no Preamble Address Code is given which would move the cursor.

(x) A roll-up caption remains displayed until one of the standard caption erasure techniques is applied. Receipt of a Resume Caption Loading command (for pop-on style) or a Resume Direct Captioning command (for paint-on style) will not affect a roll-up display. Receipt of a Roll-Up

Caption command will cause any pop-on or paint-on caption to be erased from displayed memory and non-displayed memory.

(2) Pop-on. Pop-on style captioning is initiated by receipt of a Resume Caption Loading command. Subsequent data are loaded into a non-displayed memory and held there until an End of Caption command is received, at which point the non-displayed memory becomes the displayed memory and vice versa. (This process is often referred to as "flipping memories" and does not automatically erase memory.) An End of Caption command forces the receiver into pop-on style if no Resume Caption Loading command has been received which would do so. The display will be capable of 4 full rows, not necessarily contiguous, simultaneous anywhere on the screen.

(i) Preamble Address Codes can be used to move the cursor around the screen in random order to place captions on Rows 1 to 15. Carriage Returns have no effect on cursor location during caption loading.

(ii) The cursor moves automatically one column to the right after each character or Mid-Row Code received. Receipt of a Backspace will move the cursor one column to the left, erasing the character of Mid-Row Code occupying that location. (A Backspace received when the cursor is in Column 1 will be ignored.) Once the cursor reaches the 32nd column position on any row, all subsequent characters received prior to a Backspace, an End of Caption, or a Preamble Address Code, will replace any previous character at that location.

(iii) The Delete to End of Row command will erase from memory any characters or control codes starting at the current cursor location and in all columns to its right on the same row. If no displayable characters remain on a row after the Delete to End of Row is acted upon, the solid space (if any) for that element should also be erased.

(iv) If data reception is interrupted during caption loading by data for the alternate caption channel or for Text Mode, caption loading will resume at the same cursor position if a Resume Caption Loading command is received and no Preamble Address Code is given that would move the cursor.

(v) Characters remain in non-displayed memory until an End of Caption command flips memories. The caption will be erased without being displayed upon receipt of an Erase Non-Displayed Memory command, a Roll-Up Caption command, or if the user switches receiver channels, data channels or fields, or upon the loss of valid data (see paragraph (j) of this section).

(vi) A pop-on caption, once displayed, remains displayed until one of the standard caption erasure techniques is applied or until a Roll-Up Caption command is received. Characters within a displayed pop-on caption will be replaced by receipt of the Resume Direct Captioning command and paint-on style techniques (see below).

(3) Paint-on. Paint-on style captioning is initiated by receipt of a Resume Direct Captioning command. Subsequent data are addressed immediately to displayed memory without need for an End of Caption command.

(i) Preamble Address Codes can be used to move the cursor around the screen in random order to display captions on Rows 1 to 15. Carriage Returns have no affect on cursor location during direct captioning. The cursor moves automatically one column to the right after each character or Mid-Row Code is received. Receipt of a Backspace will move the cursor one column to the left, erasing the character or Mid-Row Code occupying that location. (A Backspace received when the cursor is in Column 1 will be ignored.) Once the cursor reaches the 32nd column position on any row, all subsequent characters received prior to a Preamble Address Code or Backspace will be displayed in that column replacing any previous character occupying that location.

(ii) The Delete to End of Row command will erase from memory any characters or control codes starting at the current cursor location and in all columns to its right on the same row. If no displayable characters remain on the row after the Delete to End of Row is acted upon, the solid space (if any) for that element should also be erased.

(iii) If the reception of data is interrupted during direct captioning by data for the alternate caption channel or for Text Mode, the display of caption text will resume at the same cursor position if a Resume Direct Captioning command is received and no Preamble Address Code is given which would move the cursor.

(iv) Characters remain displayed until one of the standard caption erasure techniques is applied or until a Roll-Up Caption command is received. An End of Caption command leaves a paint-on caption fully intact in non-displayed memory. In other words, a paint-on style caption behaves precisely like a pop-on style caption which has been displayed.

(g) Character format. Characters are to be displayed on the screen within a character "cell" which is the height and width of a single row and column. The following codes define the displayable character set. Television receivers manufactured prior to January 1, 1996 and having a character resolution of 5 x 7 dots, or less, may display the allowable alternate characters in the character table. A statement must be in a prominent location on the box or other package in which the receiver is to be marketed, and information must be in the owner's manual, indicating the receiver displays closed captioning in upper case only.

## CHARACTER SET TABLE

### Special Characters

These require two bytes for each symbol. Each hex coder as shown will be preceded by a 11h for data channel 1 or by a 19h for data channel 2. For example: 19h 37h will place a musical note in data channel 2.

| <u>HEX</u> | <u>Example</u> | <u>Alternate</u> | <u>Description</u>     |
|------------|----------------|------------------|------------------------|
| 30         | ®              | * see note       | registered mark symbol |
| 31         | °              |                  | degree sign            |
| 32         | ½              |                  | 1/2                    |

|    |    |            |                                |
|----|----|------------|--------------------------------|
| 33 | ¿  |            | inverse query                  |
| 34 | ™* | * see note | trademark symbol               |
| 35 | ¢  |            | cents sign                     |
| 36 | £  |            | Pounds Sterling sign           |
| 37 | —  |            | music note                     |
| 38 | à  | A          | lower-case a with grave accent |
| 39 |    |            | transparent space              |
| 3A | è  | E          | lower-case e with grave accent |
| 3B | â  | A          | lower-case a with circumflex   |
| 3C | ê  | E          | lower-case e with circumflex   |
| 3D | î  | I          | lower-case i with circumflex   |
| 3E | ô  | O          | lower-case o with circumflex   |
| 3F | û  | U          | lower-case u with circumflex   |

\* NOTE: The registered mark and trademark symbols are used to satisfy certain legal requirements. There are various legal ways in which these symbols may be drawn or displayed. For example, the trademark symbol may be drawn with the "T" next to the "M" or over the "M". It is preferred that the trademark symbol be superscripted, i.e., XYZ<sup>TM</sup>. It is left to each individual manufacturer to interpret these symbols in any way that meets the legal needs of the user.

#### Standard Characters

| <u>HEX</u> | <u>Example</u> | <u>Alternate</u> | <u>Description</u>             |
|------------|----------------|------------------|--------------------------------|
| 20         |                |                  | standard space                 |
| 21         | !              |                  | exclamation mark               |
| 22         | "              |                  | quotation mark                 |
| 23         | #              |                  | pounds (number) sign           |
| 24         | \$             |                  | dollar sign                    |
| 25         | %              |                  | percentage sign                |
| 26         | &              |                  | ampersand                      |
| 27         | '              |                  | apostrophe                     |
| 28         | (              |                  | open parentheses               |
| 29         | )              |                  | close parentheses              |
| 2A         | á              | A                | lower-case a with acute accent |
| 2B         | +              |                  | plus sign                      |
| 2C         | ,              |                  | comma                          |
| 2D         | -              |                  | minus (hyphen) sign            |
| 2E         | .              |                  | period                         |
| 2F         | /              |                  | slash                          |
| 30         | 0              |                  | zero                           |
| 31         | 1              |                  | one                            |
| 32         | 2              |                  | two                            |
| 33         | 3              |                  | three                          |
| 34         | 4              |                  | four                           |
| 35         | 5              |                  | five                           |
| 36         | 6              |                  | six                            |

|    |   |   |                                |
|----|---|---|--------------------------------|
| 37 | 7 |   | seven                          |
| 38 | 8 |   | eight                          |
| 39 | 9 |   | nine                           |
| 3A | : |   | colon                          |
| 3B | ; |   | semi-colon                     |
| 3C | < |   | less than sign                 |
| 3D | = |   | equal sign                     |
| 3E | > |   | greater than sign              |
| 3F | ? |   | question mark                  |
| 40 | @ |   | at sign                        |
| 41 | A |   | upper-case A                   |
| 42 | B |   | upper-case B                   |
| 43 | C |   | upper-case C                   |
| 44 | D |   | upper-case D                   |
| 45 | E |   | upper-case E                   |
| 46 | F |   | upper-case F                   |
| 47 | G |   | upper-case G                   |
| 48 | H |   | upper-case H                   |
| 49 | I |   | upper-case I                   |
| 4A | J |   | upper-case J                   |
| 4B | K |   | upper-case K                   |
| 4C | L |   | upper-case L                   |
| 4D | M |   | upper-case M                   |
| 4E | N |   | upper-case N                   |
| 4F | O |   | upper-case O                   |
| 50 | P |   | upper-case P                   |
| 51 | Q |   | upper-case Q                   |
| 52 | R |   | upper-case R                   |
| 53 | S |   | upper-case S                   |
| 54 | T |   | upper-case T                   |
| 55 | U |   | upper-case U                   |
| 56 | V |   | upper-case V                   |
| 57 | W |   | upper-case W                   |
| 58 | X |   | upper-case X                   |
| 59 | Y |   | upper-case Y                   |
| 5A | Z |   | upper-case Z                   |
| 5B | [ |   | open bracket                   |
| 5C | é | E | lower-case e with acute accent |
| 5D | ] |   | close bracket                  |
| 5E | í | I | lower-case i with acute accent |
| 5F | ó | O | lower-case o with acute accent |
| 60 | ú | U | lower-case u with acute accent |
| 61 | a | A | lower-case a                   |
| 62 | b | B | lower-case b                   |
| 63 | c | C | lower-case c                   |
| 64 | d | D | lower-case d                   |

|    |   |   |                           |
|----|---|---|---------------------------|
| 65 | e | E | lower-case e              |
| 66 | f | F | lower-case f              |
| 67 | g | G | lower-case g              |
| 68 | h | H | lower-case h              |
| 69 | i | I | lower-case i              |
| 6A | j | J | lower-case j              |
| 6B | k | K | lower-case k              |
| 6C | l | L | lower-case l              |
| 6D | m | M | lower-case m              |
| 6E | n | N | lower-case n              |
| 6F | o | O | lower-case o              |
| 70 | p | P | lower-case p              |
| 71 | q | Q | lower-case q              |
| 72 | r | R | lower-case r              |
| 73 | s | S | lower-case s              |
| 74 | t | T | lower-case t              |
| 75 | u | U | lower-case u              |
| 76 | v | V | lower-case v              |
| 77 | w | W | lower-case w              |
| 78 | x | X | lower-case x              |
| 79 | y | Y | lower-case y              |
| 7A | z | Z | lower-case z              |
| 7B | ç | C | lower-case c with cedilla |
| 7C | ÷ |   | division sign             |
| 7D | Ñ |   | upper-case N with tilde   |
| 7E | ñ | Ñ | lower-case n with tilde   |
| 7F | ■ |   | solid block               |

(h) Character attributes.

(1) Transmission of attributes. A character may be transmitted with any or all of four attributes: color, italics, underline, and flash. All of these attributes are set by control codes included in the received data. An attribute will remain in effect until changed by another control code or until the end of the row is reached. Each row begins with a control code which sets the color and underline attributes. (White non-underlined is the default display attribute if no Preamble Address Code is received before the first character on an empty row.) Attributes are not affected by transparent spaces within a row.

(i) All Mid-Row Codes and the Flash On command are spacing attributes which appear in the display just as if a standard space (20h) had been received. Preamble Address Codes are non-spacing and will not alter any attributes when used to position the cursor in the midst of a row of characters.

(ii) The color attribute has the highest priority and can only be changed by the Mid-Row Code of another color. Italics has the next highest priority. If characters with both color and italics are desired, the italics Mid-Row Code must follow the color assignment. Any color Mid-Row Code will turn off italics. If the least significant bit of a Preamble Address Code or of a color or italics

Mid-Row Code is a 1 (high), underlining is turned on. If that bit is a 0 (low), underlining is off.

(iii) The flash attribute is transmitted as a Miscellaneous Control Code. The Flash On command will not alter the status of the color, italics, or underline attributes. However, any color or italics Mid-Row Code will turn off flash.

(iv) Thus, for example, if a red, italicized, underlined, flashing character is desired, the attributes must be received in the following order: a red Mid-Row or Preamble Address Code, an italics Mid-Row Code with underline bit, and the Flash On command. The character will then be preceded by three spaces (two if red was assigned via a Preamble Address Code).

(2) Display of attributes. The underline attribute will be displayed by drawing a line beneath the character in the same color as the character. The flash attribute will be displayed by causing the character to blank from the display at least once per second. The italic attribute must be capable of being displayed by either a special italic font, or by the modification of the standard font by slanting. The user may be given the option to select other methods of italic display as well. The support of the color attributes is optional. If the color attributes are supported, they will be displayed in the color they have been assigned. If color attributes are not supported, the display may be in color, but all color changes will be ignored.

(i) Control codes. There are three different types of control codes used to identify the format, location, attributes, and display of characters: Preamble Address Codes, Mid-Row Codes, and Miscellaneous Control Codes.

(1) Each control code consists of a pair of bytes which are always transmitted together in a single field of line 21 and which are normally transmitted twice in succession to help insure correct reception of the control instructions. The first of the control code bytes is a non-printing character in the range 10h to 1Fh. The second byte is always a printing character in the range 20h to 7Fh. Any such control code pair received which has not been assigned a function is ignored. If the non-printing character in the pair is in the range 00h to 0Fh, that character alone will be ignored and the second character will be treated normally.

(2) If the second byte of a control code pair does not contain odd parity (see paragraph (j) of this section), then the pair is ignored. The redundant transmission of the pair will be the instruction upon which the receiver acts.

(3) If the first byte of the first transmission of a control code pair fails the parity check, then that byte is inserted into the currently active memory as a solid block character (7Fh) followed by whatever the second byte is. Again, the redundant transmission of the pair will be the controlling instruction.

(4) If the first transmission of a control code pair passes parity, it is acted upon within one video frame. If the next frame contains a perfect repeat of the same pair, the redundant code is ignored. If, however, the next frame contains a different but also valid control code pair, this pair, too, will be acted upon (and the receiver will expect a repeat of this second pair in the next frame). If the first byte of the expected redundant control code pair fails the parity check and the second byte is identical to

the second byte in the immediately preceding pair, then the expected redundant code is ignored. If there are printing characters in place of the redundant code, they will be processed normally.

(5) There is provision for decoding a second data channel. The second data channel is encoded with the same control codes and procedures already described. The first byte of every control code pair indicates the data channel (C1/C2) to which the command applies. Control codes which do not match the data channel selected by the user, and all subsequent data related to that control code, are ignored by the receiver.

#### MID-ROW CODES

| Data<br>Channel 1 | Data<br>Channel 2 | Attribute Description |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 11 20             | 19 20             | White                 |
| 11 21             | 19 21             | White Underline       |
| 11 22             | 19 22             | Green                 |
| 11 23             | 19 23             | Green Underline       |
| 11 24             | 19 24             | Blue                  |
| 11 25             | 19 25             | Blue Underline        |
| 11 26             | 19 26             | Cyan                  |
| 11 27             | 19 27             | Cyan Underline        |
| 11 28             | 19 28             | Red                   |
| 11 29             | 19 29             | Red Underline         |
| 11 2A             | 19 2A             | Yellow                |
| 11 2B             | 19 2B             | Yellow Underline      |
| 11 2C             | 19 2C             | Magenta               |
| 11 2D             | 19 2D             | Magenta Underline     |
| 11 2E             | 19 2E             | Italics               |
| 11 2F             | 19 2F             | Italics Underline     |

#### MISCELLANEOUS CONTROL CODES

| Data<br>Channel 1 | Data<br>Channel 2 | Mnemonic | Command Description           |
|-------------------|-------------------|----------|-------------------------------|
| 14 20             | 1C 20             | RCL      | Resume Caption Loading        |
| 14 21             | 1C 21             | BS       | Backspace                     |
| 14 22             | 1C 22             | AOF      | reserved (formerly Alarm Off) |
| 14 23             | 1C 23             | AON      | reserved (formerly Alarm On)  |
| 14 24             | 1C 24             | DER      | Delete to End of Row          |
| 14 25             | 1C 25             | RU2      | Roll-Up Captions-2 Rows       |
| 14 26             | 1C 26             | RU3      | Roll-Up Captions-3 Rows       |

|       |       |     |                                |
|-------|-------|-----|--------------------------------|
| 14 27 | 1C 27 | RU4 | Roll-Up Captions-4 Rows        |
| 14 28 | 1C 28 | FON | Flash On                       |
| 14 29 | 1C 29 | RDC | Resume Direct Captioning       |
| 14 2A | 1C 2A | TR  | Text Restart                   |
| 14 2B | 1C 2B | RTD | Resume Text Display            |
| 14 2C | 1C 2C | EDM | Erase Displayed Memory         |
| 14 2D | 1C 2D | CR  | Carriage Return                |
| 14 2E | 1C 2E | ENM | Erase Non-Displayed Memory     |
| 14 2F | 1C 2F | EOC | End of Caption (Flip Memories) |
| 17 21 | 1F 21 | TO1 | Tab Offset 1 Column            |
| 17 22 | 1F 22 | TO2 | Tab Offset 2 Columns           |
| 17 23 | 1F 23 | TO3 | Tab Offset 3 Columns           |

### PREAMBLE ADDRESS CODES

|                                  | Ro<br>w<br>1 | Ro<br>w<br>2 | Ro<br>w<br>3 | Ro<br>w<br>4 | Ro<br>w<br>5 | Ro<br>w<br>6 | Ro<br>w<br>7 | Ro<br>w<br>8 | Ro<br>w<br>9 | Ro<br>w<br>10 | Ro<br>w<br>11 | Ro<br>w<br>12 | Ro<br>w<br>13 | Ro<br>w<br>14 | Ro<br>w<br>15 |
|----------------------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| <b>First byte of code pair:</b>  |              |              |              |              |              |              |              |              |              |               |               |               |               |               |               |
| Data Channel 1                   | 11           | 11           | 12           | 12           | 15           | 15           | 16           | 16           | 17           | 17            | 10            | 13            | 13            | 14            | 14            |
| Data Channel 2                   | 19           | 19           | 1A           | 1A           | 1D           | 1D           | 1E           | 1E           | 1F           | 1F            | 18            | 1B            | 1B            | 1C            | 1C            |
| <b>Second byte of code pair:</b> |              |              |              |              |              |              |              |              |              |               |               |               |               |               |               |
| White                            | 40           | 60           | 40           | 60           | 40           | 60           | 40           | 60           | 40           | 60            | 40            | 40            | 60            | 40            | 60            |
| White Underline                  | 41           | 61           | 41           | 61           | 41           | 61           | 41           | 61           | 41           | 61            | 41            | 41            | 61            | 41            | 61            |
| Green                            | 42           | 62           | 42           | 62           | 42           | 62           | 42           | 62           | 42           | 62            | 42            | 42            | 62            | 42            | 62            |
| Green Underline                  | 43           | 63           | 43           | 63           | 43           | 63           | 43           | 63           | 43           | 63            | 43            | 43            | 63            | 43            | 63            |
| Blue                             | 44           | 64           | 44           | 64           | 44           | 64           | 44           | 64           | 44           | 64            | 44            | 44            | 64            | 44            | 64            |
| Blue Underline                   | 45           | 65           | 45           | 65           | 45           | 65           | 45           | 65           | 45           | 65            | 45            | 45            | 65            | 45            | 65            |
| Cyan                             | 46           | 66           | 46           | 66           | 46           | 66           | 46           | 66           | 46           | 66            | 46            | 46            | 66            | 46            | 66            |
| Cyan Underline                   | 47           | 67           | 47           | 67           | 47           | 67           | 47           | 67           | 47           | 67            | 47            | 47            | 67            | 47            | 67            |
| Red                              | 48           | 68           | 48           | 68           | 48           | 68           | 48           | 68           | 48           | 68            | 48            | 48            | 68            | 48            | 68            |
| Red Underline                    | 49           | 69           | 49           | 69           | 49           | 69           | 49           | 69           | 49           | 69            | 49            | 49            | 69            | 49            | 69            |
| Yellow                           | 4A           | 6A           | 4A           | 6A           | 4A           | 6A           | 4A           | 6A           | 4A           | 6A            | 4A            | 4A            | 6A            | 4A            | 6A            |
| Yellow Underline                 | 4B           | 6B           | 4B           | 6B           | 4B           | 6B           | 4B           | 6B           | 4B           | 6B            | 4B            | 4B            | 6B            | 4B            | 6B            |
| Magenta                          | 4C           | 6C           | 4C           | 6C           | 4C           | 6C           | 4C           | 6C           | 4C           | 6C            | 4C            | 4C            | 6C            | 4C            | 6C            |
| Magenta Underline                | 4D           | 6D           | 4D           | 6D           | 4D           | 6D           | 4D           | 6D           | 4D           | 6D            | 4D            | 4D            | 6D            | 4D            | 6D            |
| White Italics                    | 4E           | 6E           | 4E           | 6E           | 4E           | 6E           | 4E           | 6E           | 4E           | 6E            | 4E            | 4E            | 6E            | 4E            | 6E            |
| White Italics Underline          | 4F           | 6F           | 4F           | 6F           | 4F           | 6F           | 4F           | 6F           | 4F           | 6F            | 4F            | 4F            | 6F            | 4F            | 6F            |
| Indent 0                         | 50           | 70           | 50           | 70           | 50           | 70           | 50           | 70           | 50           | 70            | 50            | 50            | 70            | 50            | 70            |
| Indent 0 Underline               | 51           | 71           | 51           | 71           | 51           | 71           | 51           | 71           | 51           | 71            | 51            | 51            | 71            | 51            | 71            |
| Indent 4                         | 52           | 72           | 52           | 72           | 52           | 72           | 52           | 72           | 52           | 72            | 52            | 52            | 72            | 52            | 72            |
| Indent 4 Underline               | 53           | 73           | 53           | 73           | 53           | 73           | 53           | 73           | 53           | 73            | 53            | 53            | 73            | 53            | 73            |
| Indent 8                         | 54           | 74           | 54           | 74           | 54           | 74           | 54           | 74           | 54           | 74            | 54            | 54            | 74            | 54            | 74            |
| Indent 8 Underline               | 55           | 75           | 55           | 75           | 55           | 75           | 55           | 75           | 55           | 75            | 55            | 55            | 75            | 55            | 75            |
| Indent 12                        | 56           | 76           | 56           | 76           | 56           | 76           | 56           | 76           | 56           | 76            | 56            | 56            | 76            | 56            | 76            |

|                            |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |
|----------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <b>Indent 12 Underline</b> | <b>57</b> | <b>77</b> | <b>57</b> | <b>77</b> | <b>57</b> | <b>77</b> | <b>57</b> | <b>77</b> | <b>57</b> | <b>77</b> | <b>57</b> | <b>77</b> | <b>57</b> | <b>77</b> |
| <b>Indent 16</b>           | <b>58</b> | <b>78</b> | <b>58</b> | <b>78</b> | <b>58</b> | <b>78</b> | <b>58</b> | <b>78</b> | <b>58</b> | <b>78</b> | <b>58</b> | <b>78</b> | <b>58</b> | <b>78</b> |
| <b>Indent 16 Underline</b> | <b>59</b> | <b>79</b> | <b>59</b> | <b>79</b> | <b>59</b> | <b>79</b> | <b>59</b> | <b>79</b> | <b>59</b> | <b>79</b> | <b>59</b> | <b>79</b> | <b>59</b> | <b>79</b> |
| <b>Indent 20</b>           | <b>5A</b> | <b>7A</b> | <b>5A</b> | <b>7A</b> | <b>5A</b> | <b>7A</b> | <b>5A</b> | <b>7A</b> | <b>5A</b> | <b>7A</b> | <b>5A</b> | <b>7A</b> | <b>5A</b> | <b>7A</b> |
| <b>Indent 20 Underline</b> | <b>5B</b> | <b>7B</b> | <b>5B</b> | <b>7B</b> | <b>5B</b> | <b>7B</b> | <b>5B</b> | <b>7B</b> | <b>5B</b> | <b>7B</b> | <b>5B</b> | <b>7B</b> | <b>5B</b> | <b>7B</b> |
| <b>Indent 24</b>           | <b>5C</b> | <b>7C</b> | <b>5C</b> | <b>7C</b> | <b>5C</b> | <b>7C</b> | <b>5C</b> | <b>7C</b> | <b>5C</b> | <b>7C</b> | <b>5C</b> | <b>7C</b> | <b>5C</b> | <b>7C</b> |
| <b>Indent 24 Underline</b> | <b>5D</b> | <b>7D</b> | <b>5D</b> | <b>7D</b> | <b>5D</b> | <b>7D</b> | <b>5D</b> | <b>7D</b> | <b>5D</b> | <b>7D</b> | <b>5D</b> | <b>7D</b> | <b>5D</b> | <b>7D</b> |
| <b>Indent 28</b>           | <b>5E</b> | <b>7E</b> | <b>5E</b> | <b>7E</b> | <b>5E</b> | <b>7E</b> | <b>5E</b> | <b>7E</b> | <b>5E</b> | <b>7E</b> | <b>5E</b> | <b>7E</b> | <b>5E</b> | <b>7E</b> |
| <b>Indent 28 Underline</b> | <b>5F</b> | <b>7F</b> | <b>5F</b> | <b>7F</b> | <b>5F</b> | <b>7F</b> | <b>5F</b> | <b>7F</b> | <b>5F</b> | <b>7F</b> | <b>5F</b> | <b>7F</b> | <b>5F</b> | <b>7F</b> |

NOTE: All indent codes (second byte equals 50h-5Fh, 70h-7Fh) assign white as the color attribute.

(j) Data rejection. The receiver should provide an effective procedure to verify data. A receiver will reject data if the data is invalid, or if the data is directed to the data channel or field not selected by the user. Invalid data is any data that fails to pass a check for odd parity, or which, having passed the parity check, is assigned no function.

(1) If a print character fails to pass a check for parity, a solid block (7Fh) should be displayed in place of the failed character. In addition, valid data can be corrupted in many ways and may not be suitable for display. For example, repeated fields, skipped fields and altered field sequences are all possible from consumer video equipment and might present meaningless captions.

(2) The receiver will ignore data rejected due to being directed to a deselected field or channel. However, this will not cause the display to be disabled.

(k) Automatic display enable/disable. The receiver shall provide an automatic enable/disable capability to prevent the display of invalid or incomplete data, when the user selects the Caption Mode. The display should automatically become enabled after the receiver verifies the data as described in paragraph (j) of this section. The display will be automatically disabled when there is a sustained detection of invalid data. The display will be re-enabled when the data verification process has been satisfied once again.

(l) Compatibility with cable security systems. Certain cable television security techniques, such as signal encryption and copy protection, can alter the television signal so that some methods of finding line 21 will not work. In particular, counting of lines or timing from the start of the vertical blanking interval may cause problems. Caption decoding circuitry must function properly when receiving signals from cable security systems that were designed and marketed prior to April 5, 1991. Further information concerning such systems is available from the National Cable Television Association, Inc., Washington, DC, and from the Electronic Industries Association, Washington, DC.

(m) Labelling and consumer information requirements. The box or other package in which the individual television receiver is to be marketed shall carry a statement in a prominent location, visible to the buyer before purchase, which reads as follows:

This television receiver provides display of television closed captioning in accordance with Section 15.119 of the FCC rules.

Receivers that do not support color attributes or text mode, as well as receivers that display only upper-case characters pursuant to paragraph (g) of this section, must include with the statement, and in the owner's manual, language indicating that those features are not supported.

(n) Glossary of terms. The following terms are used to describe caption decoder specifications:

(1) Base row - The bottom row of a roll-up display. The cursor always remains on the base row. Rows of text roll upwards into the contiguous rows immediately above the base row.

(2) Box - The area surrounding the active character display. In Text Mode, the box is the entire screen area defined for display, whether or not displayable characters appear. In Caption Mode, the box is dynamically redefined by each caption and each element of displayable characters within a caption. The box (or boxes, in the case of a multiple-element caption) includes all the cells of the displayed characters, the non-transparent spaces between them, and one cell at the beginning and end of each row within a caption element in those decoders that use a solid space to improve legibility.

(3) Caption window - The invisible rectangle which defines the top and bottom limits of a roll-up caption. The window can be 2 to 4 rows high. The lowest row of the window is called the base row.

(4) Cell - The discrete screen area in which each displayable character or space may appear. A cell is one row high and one column wide.

(5) Column - One of 32 vertical divisions of the screen, each of equal width, extending approximately across the full width of the safe caption area as defined in paragraph (n)(12) of this section. Two additional columns, one at the left of the screen and one at the right, may be defined for the appearance of a box in those decoders which use a solid space to improve legibility, but no displayable characters may appear in those additional columns. For reference, columns may be numbered 0 to 33, with columns 1 to 32 reserved for displayable characters.

(6) Displayable character - Any letter, number or symbol which is defined for on-screen display, plus the 20h space.

(7) Display disable - To turn off the display of captions or text (and accompanying background) at the receiver, rather than through codes transmitted on line 21 which unconditionally erase the display. The receiver may disable the display because the user selects an alternate mode, e.g. TV Mode, or because no valid line 21 data is present.

(8) Display enable - To allow the display of captions or text when they are transmitted on line 21 and received as valid data. For display to be enabled, the user must have selected Caption Mode or Text Mode, and valid data for the selected mode must be present on line 21.

(9) Element - In a pop-on or paint-on style caption, each contiguous area of cells containing displayable characters and non-transparent spaces between those characters. A single caption may have multiple elements. An element is not necessarily a perfect rectangle, but may include rows of

differing widths.

(10) Erase display - In Caption Mode, to clear the screen of all characters (and accompanying background) in response to codes transmitted on line 21. (The caption service provider can accomplish the erasure either by sending an Erase Displayed Memory command or by sending an Erase Non-Displayed Memory command followed by an End of Caption command, effectively making a blank caption "appear".) Display can also be erased by the receiver when the caption memory erasure conditions are met, such as the user changing TV channels.

(11) Row - One of 15 horizontal divisions of the screen, extending across the full height of the safe caption area as defined in paragraph (n)(12) of this section.

(12) Safe caption area - The area of the television picture within which captioning and text shall be displayed to ensure visibility of the information on the majority of home television receivers. The safe caption area is specified as shown in the following figure:

---

**[insert safe caption area figure]**

---

The dimensions of the above figure shall be as follows:

| Label | Dimensions                               | Percent of Television Picture Height |
|-------|--|--------------------------------------|
| A     | Television picture height                | 100.0                                |
| B     | Television picture width                 | 133.33                               |
| C     | Height of safe caption area              | 80.0                                 |
| D     | Width of safe caption area               | 106.67                               |
| E     | Vertical position of safe caption area   | 10.0                                 |
| F     | Horizontal position of safe caption area | 13.33                                |

(13) Special characters - Displayable characters (except for "transparent space") which require a two-byte sequence of one non-printing and one printing character. The non-printing byte varies depending on the data channel. Regular characters require unique one-byte codes which are the same in either data channel.

(14) Text - When written with an upper-case "T", refers to the Text Mode. When written with a lower-case "t", refers to any combination of displayable characters.

(15) Transparent space - Transmitted as a special character, it is a one-column-wide space behind which program video is always visible (except when a transparent space immediately precedes or follows a displayable character and a solid box is needed to make that character legible).

Section 15.120 Program blocking technology requirements for television receivers.

(a) Effective July 1, 1999, manufacturers of television broadcast receivers as defined in Section 15.3(w) of this chapter, including personal computer systems meeting that definition, must ensure that one-half of their product models with picture screens 33 cm (13 in) or larger in diameter shipped in interstate commerce or manufactured in the United States complies with the provisions of paragraphs (c), (d), and (e) of this section.

NOTE: This paragraph places no restrictions on the shipping or sale of television receivers that were manufactured before July, 1999.

(b) Effective January 1, 2000, all TV broadcast receivers as defined in Section 15.3(w) of this chapter, including personal computer systems meeting that definition, with picture screens 33 cm (13 in) or larger in diameter shipped in interstate commerce or manufactured in the United States shall comply with the provisions of paragraphs (c), (d), and (e) of this section.

(c) Transmission Format.

(1) Analog television program rating information shall be transmitted on line 21 of field 2 of the vertical blanking interval of television signals, in accordance with § 73.682(a)(22) of this chapter.

(2) Digital television program rating information shall be transmitted in digital television signals in accordance with § 73.682(d) of this chapter.

(d) Operation.

(1) Analog television receivers will receive program ratings transmitted pursuant to EIA-744: "Transport of Content Advisory Information Using Extended Data Service (XDS)" (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38) and EIA-608: "Recommended Practice for Line 21 Data Service" (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38). Blocking of programming shall occur when a program rating is received that meets the pre-determined user requirements.

(2) Digital television receivers shall react in a similar manner as analog televisions when programmed to block specific rating categories. Effective March 15, 2006, digital television receivers will receive program rating descriptors transmitted pursuant to industry standard EIA/CEA -766-A "U.S. and Canadian Region Rating Tables (RRT) and Content Advisory Descriptors for Transport of Content Advisory Information using ATSC A/65-A Program and System Information Protocol (PSIP)," 2001 (incorporated by reference, see §15.38). Blocking of programs shall occur when a program rating is received that meets the pre-determined user requirements. Digital television receivers shall be able to respond to changes in the content advisory rating system.

(e) All television receivers as described in paragraph (a) of this section shall block programming as follows:

(1) Channel Blocking. Channel Blocking should occur as soon as a program rating packet with the appropriate Content Advisory or MPAA rating level is received. Program blocking is

described as a receiver performing all of the following:

- Muting the program audio
- Rendering the video black or otherwise indecipherable
- Eliminating program-related captions

(2) Default State. The default state of a receiver (*i.e.*, as provided to the consumer) should not block unrated programs. However, it is permissible to include features that allow the user to reprogram the receiver to block programs not rated.

(3) Picture-In-Picture (PIP). If a receiver has the ability to decode program-related rating information for the Picture-In-Picture (PIP) video signal, then it should block the PIP channel in the same manner as the main channel. If the receiver does not have the ability to decode PIP program-related rating information, then it should block or otherwise disable the PIP if the viewer has enabled program blocking.

(4) Selection of Ratings. Each television receiver, in accordance with user input, shall block programming based on the age based ratings, the content based ratings, or a combination of the two.

(i) If the user chooses to block programming according to its age based rating level, the receiver must have the ability to automatically block programs with a more restrictive age based rating. For example, if all shows with an age-based rating of TV-PG have been selected for blocking, the user should be able to automatically block programs with the more restrictive ratings of TV-14 and TV-MA.

(ii) If the user chooses to block programming according to a combination of age based and content based ratings the receiver must have the ability to automatically block programming with a more restrictive age rating but a similar content rating. For example, if all shows rated TV-PG-V have been selected for blocking, the user should be able to block automatically shows with the more restrictive ratings of TV-14-V and TV-MA-V.

(iii) The user should have the capability of overriding the automatic blocking described in paragraphs (4)(i) and (4)(ii) of this section.

#### Section 15.121 Scanning receivers and frequency converters used with scanning receivers.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, scanning receivers and frequency converters designed or marketed for use with scanning receivers, shall:

(1) Be incapable of operating (tuning), or readily being altered by the user to operate, within the frequency bands allocated to the Cellular Radiotelephone Service in Part 22 of this chapter (cellular telephone bands). Scanning receivers capable of "readily being altered by the user" include, but are not limited to, those for which the ability to receive transmissions in the cellular telephone bands can be added by clipping the leads of, or installing, a simple component such as a diode, resistor or jumper

wire; replacing a plug-in semiconductor chip; or programming a semiconductor chip using special access codes or an external device, such as a personal computer. Scanning receivers, and frequency converters designed for use with scanning receivers, also shall be incapable of converting digital cellular communication transmissions to analog voice audio.

(2) Be designed so that the tuning, control and filtering circuitry is inaccessible. The design must be such that any attempts to modify the equipment to receive transmissions from the Cellular Radiotelephone Service likely will render the receiver inoperable.

(b) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, scanning receivers shall reject any signals from the Cellular Radiotelephone Service frequency bands that are 38 dB or lower based upon a 12 dB SINAD measurement, which is considered the threshold where a signal can be clearly discerned from any interference that may be present.

(c) Scanning receivers and frequency converters designed or marketed for use with scanning receivers, are not subject to the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section provided that they are manufactured exclusively for, and marketed exclusively to, entities described in 18 U.S.C. Section 2512(2), or are marketed exclusively as test equipment pursuant to § 15.3(dd).

(d) Modification of a scanning receiver to receive transmissions from Cellular Radiotelephone Service frequency bands will be considered to constitute manufacture of such equipment. This includes any individual, individuals, entity or organization that modifies one or more scanners. Any modification to a scanning receiver to receive transmissions from the Cellular Radiotelephone Service frequency bands voids the certification of the scanning receiver, regardless of the date of manufacture of the original unit. In addition, the provisions of § 15.23 shall not be interpreted as permitting modification of a scanning receiver to receive Cellular Radiotelephone Service transmissions.

(e) Scanning receivers and frequency converters designed for use with scanning receivers shall not be assembled from kits or marketed in kit form unless they comply with the requirements in paragraph (a) through (c) of this section.

(f) Scanning receivers shall have a label permanently affixed to the product, and this label shall be readily visible to the purchaser at the time of purchase. The label shall read as follows:

**WARNING: MODIFICATION OF THIS DEVICE TO RECEIVE CELLULAR  
RADIOTELEPHONE SERVICE SIGNALS IS PROHIBITED UNDER FCC  
RULES AND FEDERAL LAW.**

(1) "Permanently affixed" means that the label is etched, engraved, stamped, silkscreened, indelibly printed or otherwise permanently marked on a permanently attached part of the equipment or on a nameplate of metal plastic or other material fastened to the equipment by welding, riveting, or permanent adhesive. The label shall be designed to last the expected lifetime of the equipment in the environment in which the equipment may be operated and must not be readily detachable. The label shall not be a stick-on, paper label.

(2) When the device is so small that it is not practicable to place the warning label on it,

the information required by this paragraph shall be placed in a prominent location in the instruction manual or pamphlet supplied to the user and shall also be placed on the container in which the device is marketed. However, the FCC identifier must be placed on the device.

#### Section 15.122 Closed caption decoder requirements for digital television receivers and converter boxes.

(a) (1) Effective July 1, 2002, all digital television receivers with picture screens in the 4:3 aspect ratio with picture screens measuring 13 inches or larger diagonally, all digital television receivers with picture screens in the 16:9 aspect ratio measuring 7.8 inches or larger vertically and all separately sold DTV tuners shipped in interstate commerce or manufactured in the United States shall comply with the provisions of this section.

Note: This paragraph places no restrictions on the shipping or sale of digital television receivers that were manufactured before July 1, 2002.

(2) Effective July 1, 2002, DTV converter boxes that allow digitally transmitted television signals to be displayed on analog receivers shall pass available analog caption information to the attached receiver in a form recognizable by that receiver's built-in caption decoder circuitry.

Note: This paragraph places no restrictions on the shipping or sale of DTV converter boxes that were manufactured before July 1, 2002.

(b) Digital television receivers and tuners must be capable of decoding closed captioning information that is delivered pursuant to EIA-708-B: "Digital Television (DTV) Closed Captioning" (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38).

(c) *Services.*

(1) Decoders must be capable of decoding and processing data for the six standard services, Caption Service #1 through Caption Service #6.

(2) Decoders that rely on Program and System Information Protocol data to implement closed captioning functions must be capable of decoding and processing the Caption Service Directory data. Such decoders must be capable of decoding all Caption Channel Block Headers consisting of Standard Service Headers, Extended Service Block Headers, and Null Block headers. However, decoding of the data is required only for Standard Service Blocks (Service IDs  $\leq 6$ ), and then only if the characters for the corresponding language are supported. The decoders must be able to display the directory for services 1 through 6.

(d) *Code Space Organization.*

(1) Decoders must support Code Space C0, G0, C1, and G1 in their entirety.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| C | 0 | G | 0 | C | 1 | G | 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

| B7-b4 |   | 0   | 1    | 2         | 3  | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7   | 8   | 9   | A   | B | C | D | E | F |
|-------|---|-----|------|-----------|----|---|---|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|---|---|---|---|---|
| b3-b0 | 0 | NUL | EXT1 | SP        | 0  | @ | P | ` | p   | CW0 | SPA | NBS | ° | À | Đ | à | ð |
|       | 1 |     |      | !         | 1  | A | Q | a | q   | CW1 | SPC | ı   | ± | Á | Ñ | á | ñ |
|       | 2 |     |      | "         | 2  | B | R | b | r   | CW2 | SPL | ¢   | ² | Â | Ò | â | ò |
|       | 3 | ETX |      | #         | 3  | C | S | c | s   | CW3 |     | £   | ³ | Ã | Ó | ã | ó |
|       | 4 |     |      | \$        | 4  | D | T | d | t   | CW4 |     | ¤   | ´ | Ä | Ô | ä | ô |
|       | 5 |     |      | %         | 5  | E | U | e | u   | CW5 |     | ¥   | µ | Å | Õ | å | õ |
|       | 6 |     |      | &         | 6  | F | V | f | v   | CW6 |     | ¦   | ¶ | Æ | Ö | æ | ö |
|       | 7 |     |      | '         | 7  | G | W | g | w   | CW7 | SWA | §   | · | Ç | × | ç | ÷ |
|       | 8 | BS  | P16  | (         | 8  | H | X | h | x   | CLW | DF0 | ¨   | , | È | Ø | è | ø |
|       | 9 |     |      | )         | 9  | I | Y | i | y   | DSW | DF1 | ©   | ¹ | É | Ù | é | ù |
|       | A |     |      | *         | :  | J | Z | j | z   | HDW | DF2 | ª   | º | Ê | Ú | ê | ú |
|       | B |     |      | +         | ;  | K | [ | k | {   | TGW | DF3 | «   | » | Ë | Û | ë | û |
|       | C | FF  |      | ,         | <  | L | \ | l |     | DLW | DF4 | ¬   | ¼ | Ì | Ü | ì | ü |
|       | D | CR  |      | -         | =  | M | ] | m | }   | DLY | DF5 | -   | ½ | Í | Ý | í | ý |
|       | E | HCR |      | .         | >  | N | ^ | n | ~   | DLC | DF6 | ®   | ¾ | Î | Þ | î | þ |
|       | F |     |      | /         | ?  | O | _ | o | ♯   | RST | DF7 | ¯   | ¿ | Ï | ß | ï | ÿ |
|       |   |     |      |           |    |   |   |   |     |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | 0 |     |      | TSP       | ■  |   |   |   |     |     |     | ©   |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | 1 |     |      | NBTS<br>P | ‘  |   |   |   |     |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | 2 |     |      |           | ’  |   |   |   |     |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | 3 |     |      |           | “  |   |   |   |     |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | 4 |     |      |           | ”  |   |   |   |     |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | 5 |     |      | ...       | □  |   |   |   |     |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | 6 |     |      |           |    |   |   |   | 1/8 |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | 7 |     |      |           |    |   |   |   | 3/8 |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | 8 |     |      |           |    |   |   |   | 5/8 |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | 9 |     |      |           | ™  |   |   |   | 7/8 |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | A |     |      | Š         | š  |   |   |   |     |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | B |     |      |           |    |   |   |   | ⌋   |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | C |     |      | Œ         | œ  |   |   |   | ⌌   |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | D |     |      |           | SM |   |   |   | —   |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | E |     |      |           |    |   |   |   | ⌍   |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       | F |     |      |           | Ÿ  |   |   |   | ⌎   |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |
|       |   | C 2 |      | G 2       |    |   |   |   |     | C 3 |     | G 3 |   |   |   |   |   |

Table 1 DTVCC Code Set Mapping

(2) The following characters within code space G2 must be supported:

- transparent space (TSP)
- non-breaking transparent space (NBTS)
- solid block (■)
- trademark symbol (™)

- Latin-1 characters (Š, Œ, š, œ, Ÿ)

(3) The substitutions in Table 2 are to be made if a decoder does not support the remaining G2 characters.

| G2 Character   | Substitute With                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Open single quote (‘), G2 char code 0x31                         | G0 single quote (‘), char code 0x27 |
| Close single quote (’), G2 char code 0x32                        | G0 single quote (‘), char code 0x27 |
| Open double quote (“), G2 char code 0x33                         | G0 double quote (“), char code 0x22 |
| Close double quote (”), G2 char code 0x34                        | G0 double quote (“), char code 0x22 |
| Bold bullet (•), G2 char code 0x35                               | G1 bullet (•), char code 0xB7       |
| Ellipsis(...), G2 char code 0x25                                 | G0 underscore ( _ ), char code 0x5F |
| One-eighth ( <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> ), G2 char code 0x76    | G0 percent sign (%), char code 0x25 |
| Three-eighths ( <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub> ), G2 char code 0x77 | G0 percent sign (%), char code 0x25 |
| Five-eighths ( <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub> ), G2 char code 0x78  | G0 percent sign (%), char code 0x25 |
| Seven-eighths ( <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub> ), G2 char code 0x79 | G0 percent sign (%), char code 0x25 |
| Vertical border ( ), G2 char code 0x7A                           | G0 stroke ( ), char code 0x7C       |
| Upper-right border (┐), G2 char code 0x7B                        | G0 dash (-), char code 0x2D         |
| Lower-left border (└), G2 char code 0x7C                         | G0 dash (-), char code 0x2D         |
| Horizontal border (—), G2 char code 0x7D                         | G0 dash (-), char code 0x2D         |
| Lower-right border (┘), G2 char code 0x7E                        | G0 dash (-), char code 0x2D         |
| Upper-left border (┌), G2 char code 0x7F                         | G0 dash (-), char code 0x2D         |

Table 2 G2 Character Substitution Table

(4) Support for code spaces C2, C3, and G3 is optional. All unsupported graphic symbols in the G3 code space are to be substituted with the G0 underscore character ( \_ ), char code 0x5F.

(e) *Screen Coordinates*. Table 1 specifies the screen coordinate resolutions and limits for anchor point positioning in 4:3 and 16:9 display formats, and the number of characters per row.

| Screen Aspect Ratio | Maximum Anchor Position Resolution | Minimum Anchor Position Resolution | Maximum Displayed Rows | Maximum Characters per Row |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 4:3                 | 75v x 160h                         | 15v x 32h                          | 4                      | 32                         |
| 16:9                | 75v x 210h                         | 15v x 42h                          | 4                      | 42                         |
| other               | 75v x (5 x H)                      | 15v x H*                           | 4                      | *                          |

Table 1 Screen Coordinate Resolutions & Limits

\*H = 32 x (the width of the screen in relation to a 4:3 display). For example, the 16:9 format is 1/3 wider than a 4:3 display; thus, H = 32 \* 4/3 = 42.667, or 42.

This means that the minimum grid resolution for a 4:3 aspect ratio instrument is 15 vertical positions x 32 horizontal positions. This minimum grid resolution for 16:9 ratio instrument is 15 vertical positions x 42

horizontal positions. These minimum grid sizes are to cover the entire safe-title area of the corresponding screen.

The minimum coordinates equate to a 1/5 reduction in the maximum horizontal and vertical grid resolution coordinates. Caption providers are to use the maximum coordinate system values when specifying anchor point positions. Decoders using the minimum resolution are to divide the provided horizontal and vertical screen coordinates by 5 to derive the equivalent minimum coordinates.

Any caption targeted for both 4:3 and 16:9 instruments is limited to 32 contiguous characters per row. If a caption is received by a 4:3 instrument that is targeted for a 16:9 display only, or requires a window width greater than 32 characters, then the caption may be completely disregarded by the decoder. 16:9 instruments should be able to process and display captions intended for 4:3 displays, providing all other minimum recommendations are met.

If the resulting size of any window is larger than the safe title area for the corresponding display's aspect ratio, then this window will be completely disregarded.

*(f) Caption Windows.*

(1) Decoders need to display no more than 4 rows of captions on the screen at any given time, regardless of the number of windows displayed. This implies that no more than 4 windows can be displayed at any given time (with each having only one caption row). However, decoders should maintain storage to support a minimum total of 8 rows of captions. This storage is needed for the worst-case support of a displayed window with 4 rows of captioning and a non-displayed window which is buffering the incoming rows for the next 4-row caption. As implied above, the maximum number of windows that may be displayed at any one time by a minimum decoder implementation is 4. If more than 4 windows are defined in the caption stream, the decoder may disregard the youngest and lowest priority window definition(s). Caption providers must be aware of this limitation, and either restrict the total number of windows used or accept that some windows will not be displayed.

(2) Decoders do not need to support overlapped windows. If a window overlaps another window, the overlapped window need not be displayed by the decoder.

(3) At a minimum, decoders will assume that all windows have rows and columns "locked". This implies that if a decoder implements the SMALL pen-size, then word-"un"wrapping, when shrinking captions, need not be implemented. Also, if a decoder implements the LARGE pen size, then word wrapping (when enlarging captions) need not be implemented.

(4) Whenever possible, the receiver should render embedded carriage returns as line breaks, since these carriage returns indicate an important aspect of the caption's formatting as determined by the service provider. However, it may sometimes be necessary for the receiver to ignore embedded line breaks. For example, if a caption is to appear in a larger font, and if its window's rows and/or columns are unlocked, the rows of text may need to become longer or shorter to fit within the allocated space. Such automatic reformatting of a caption is known as "word wrap." If decoders support word-wrapping, it must be implemented as follows:

(i) The receiver should follow standard typographic practice when implementing word wrap. Potential breaking points (word-wrapping points) are indicated by the space character (20h) and by the hyphen character (2Dh).

(ii) If a row is to be broken at a space, the receiver should remove the space from the caption display. If a row is to be broken after a hyphen, the hyphen should be retained.

(iii) If an embedded return is to be removed, it should usually be replaced with a space. However, if the character to the left of the embedded return is a hyphen, the embedded return should be removed but NOT replaced with a space.

(iv) This specification does not include optional hyphens, nor does it provide for any form of automatic hyphenation. No non-breaking hyphen is defined. The non-breaking space (A0h in the G1 code set) and the non-breaking transparent space (21h in the G2 code set) should not be considered as potential line breaks.

(v) If a single word exceeds the length of a row, the word should be placed at the start of a new row, broken at the character following the last character that fits on the row, and continued with further breaks if needed.

*(g) Window Text Painting.*

(1) All decoders should implement “left”, “right”, and “center” caption-text justification. Implementation of “full” justification is optional. If “full” justification is not implemented, fully justified captions should be treated as though they are “left” justified.

For “left” justification, decoders should display any portion of a received row of text when it is received. For “center”, “right”, and “full” justification, decoders may display any portion of a received row of text when it is received, or may delay display of a received row of text until reception of a row completion indicator. A row completion indicator is defined as receipt of a CR, ETX or any other command, except SetPenColor, SetPenAttributes, or SetPenLocation where the pen relocation is within the same row.

Receipt of a character for a displayed row which already contains text with “center”, “right” or “full” justification will cause the row to be cleared prior to the display of the newly received character and any subsequent characters. Receipt of a justification command which changes the last received justification for a given window will cause the window to be cleared.

(2) At a minimum, decoders must support LEFT\_TO\_RIGHT printing.

(3) At a minimum, decoders must support BOTTOM\_TO\_TOP scrolling. For windows sharing the same horizontal scan lines on the display, scrolling may be disabled.

(4) At a minimum, decoders must support the same recommended practices for scroll rate as is provided for NTSC closed-captioning.

(5) At a minimum, decoders must support the same recommended practices for smooth scrolling

as is provided for NTSC closed-captioning.

(6) At a minimum, decoders must implement the “snap” window display effect. If the window “fade” and “wipe” effects are not implemented, then the decoder will “snap” all windows when they are to be displayed, and the “effect speed” parameter is ignored.

(h) *Window Colors and Borders.* At a minimum, decoders must implement borderless windows with solid, black backgrounds (i.e., border type = NONE, fill color = (0,0,0), fill opacity = SOLID), and borderless transparent windows (i.e., border type = NONE, fill opacity = TRANSPARENT)..

(i) *Predefined Window and Pen Styles.* Predefined Window Style and Pen Style ID’s may be provided in the DefineWindow command. At a minimum, decoders should implement Predefined Window Attribute Style 1 and Predefined Pen Attribute Style 1, as shown in Table 4 and Table 5, respectively.

| Style ID # | Justify | Print Direction       | Scroll Direction      | Word Wrap | Display Effect | Effect Direction | Effect Speed | Fill Color       | Fill Opacity     | Border Type | Border Color | Usage   |
|------------|---------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------|----------------|------------------|--------------|------------------|------------------|-------------|--------------|---|
| 1          | LEFT    | LEFT<br>-TO-<br>RIGHT | BOTTOM<br>-TO-<br>TOP | NO        | SNAP           | n/a              | n/a          | (0,0,0)<br>Black | SOLID            | NONE        | n/a          | <i>NTSC Style PopUp<br/>Captions</i>                |
| 2          | LEFT    | LEFT<br>-TO-<br>RIGHT | BOTTOM<br>-TO-<br>TOP | NO        | SNAP           | n/a              | n/a          | n/a              | TRANS-<br>PARENT | NONE        | n/a          | <i>PopUp Captions<br/>w/o Black<br/>Background</i>  |
| 3          | CNTR    | LEFT<br>-TO-<br>RIGHT | BOTTOM<br>-TO-<br>TOP | NO        | SNAP           | n/a              | n/a          | (0,0,0)<br>Black | SOLID            | NONE        | n/a          | <i>NTSC Style<br/>Centered PopUp<br/>Captions</i>   |
| 4          | LEFT    | LEFT<br>-TO-<br>RIGHT | BOTTOM-<br>TO-<br>TOP | YES       | SNAP           | n/a              | n/a          | (0,0,0)<br>Black | SOLID            | NONE        | n/a          | <i>NTSC Style RollUp<br/>Captions</i>               |
| 5          | LEFT    | LEFT<br>-TO-<br>RIGHT | BOTTOM-<br>TO-<br>TOP | YES       | SNAP           | n/a              | n/a          | n/a              | TRANS-<br>PARENT | NONE        | n/a          | <i>RollUp Captions<br/>w/o Black<br/>Background</i> |
| 6          | CNTR    | LEFT<br>-TO-<br>RIGHT | BOTTOM-<br>TO-<br>TOP | YES       | SNAP           | n/a              | n/a          | (0,0,0)<br>Black | SOLID            | NONE        | n/a          | <i>NTSC Style<br/>Centered RollUp<br/>Captions</i>  |
| 7          | LEFT    | TOP<br>-TO-<br>BOTTOM | RIGHT<br>-TO-<br>LEFT | NO        | SNAP           | n/a              | n/a          | (0,0,0)<br>Black | SOLID            | NONE        | n/a          | <i>Ticker Tape</i>                                  |

Table 4 Predefined Window Style ID's

| Predefined Style ID | Pen Size | Font Style | Offset | Italics | Underline | Edge Type | Foregrnd Color | Foregrnd Opacity | Backgrnd Color | Backgrnd Opacity | Edge Color    | Usage  |
|---------------------|----------|------------|--------|---------|-----------|-----------|----------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|---------------|--|
| 1                   | STNDR    | 0          | NORMAL | NO      | NO        | NONE      | (2,2,2) White  | SOLID            | (0,0,0) Black  | SOLID            | n/a           | <i>Default NTSC Style*</i>                   |
| 2                   | STNDR    | 1          | NORMAL | NO      | NO        | NONE      | (2,2,2) White  | SOLID            | (0,0,0) Black  | SOLID            | n/a           | <i>NTSC Style* Mono w/ Serif</i>             |
| 3                   | STNDR    | 2          | NORMAL | NO      | NO        | NONE      | (2,2,2) White  | SOLID            | (0,0,0) Black  | SOLID            | n/a           | <i>NTSC Style* Prop w/ Serif</i>             |
| 4                   | STNDR    | 3          | NORMAL | NO      | NO        | NONE      | (2,2,2) White  | SOLID            | (0,0,0) Black  | SOLID            | n/a           | <i>NTSC Style* Mono w/o Serif</i>            |
| 5                   | STNDR    | 4          | NORMAL | NO      | NO        | NONE      | (2,2,2) White  | SOLID            | (0,0,0) Black  | SOLID            | n/a           | <i>NTSC Style* Prop w/o Serif</i>            |
| 6                   | STNDR    | 3          | NORMAL | NO      | NO        | UNIFRM    | (2,2,2) White  | SOLID            | n/a            | TRANSPARENT      | (0,0,0) Black | <i>Mono w/o Serif, Bordered Text, No BG</i>  |
| 7                   | STNDR    | 4          | NORMAL | NO      | NO        | UNIFRM    | (2,2,2) White  | SOLID            | n/a            | TRANSPARENT      | (0,0,0) Black | <i>Prop. w/o Serif, Bordered Text, No BG</i> |

Table 5 Predefined Pen Style ID's

\* "NTSC Style" - White Text on Black Background

(j) *Pen Size*. Decoders must support the standard, large, and small pen sizes and must allow the caption provider to choose a pen size and allow the viewer to choose an alternative size.

The STANDARD pen size should be implemented such that the height of the tallest character in any implemented font is no taller than 1/15 of the height of the safe-title area, and the width of the widest character is no wider than 1/32 of the width of the safe-title area for 4:3 displays and 1/42 of the safe-title area width for 16:9 displays.

The LARGE pen size should be implemented such that the width of the widest character in any implemented font is no wider than 1/32 of the safe-title area for 16:9 displays. This recommendation allows for captions to grow to a LARGE pen size without having to reformat the caption since no caption will have more than 32 characters per row.

(k) *Font Styles*. Decoders must support the eight fonts listed below. Caption providers may specify 1 of these 8 font styles to be used to write caption text. The styles specified in the “font style” parameter of the **SetPenAttributes** command are numbered from 0 through 7.

The following is a list of the 8 required font styles. For information purposes only, each font style references one or more popular fonts which embody the characteristics of the style:

- 0 - Default (undefined)
- 1 - Monospaced with serifs (similar to Courier)
- 2 - Proportionally spaced with serifs (similar to Times New Roman)
- 3 - Monospaced without serifs (similar to Helvetica Monospaced)
- 4 - Proportionally spaced without serifs (similar to Arial and Swiss)
- 5 - Casual font type (similar to Dom and Impress)
- 6 - Cursive font type (similar to Coronet and Marigold)
- 7 - Small capitals (similar to Engravers Gothic)

Font styles may be implemented in any typeface which the decoder manufacturer deems to be a readable rendition of the font style, and need not be in the exact typefaces given in the example above. Decoders must include the ability for consumers to choose among the eight fonts. The decoder must display the font chosen by the caption provider unless the viewer chooses a different font.

(l) *Character Offsetting*. Decoders need not implement the character offsetting (i.e., subscript and superscript) pen attributes.

(m) *Pen Styles*. At a minimum, decoders must implement normal, italic, and underline pen styles.

(n) *Foreground Color and Opacity*.

(1) At a minimum, decoders must implement transparent, translucent, solid and flashing character foreground type attributes.

(2) At a minimum, decoders must implement the following character foreground colors: white,

black, red, green, blue, yellow, magenta and cyan.

(3) Caption providers may specify the color/opacity. Decoders must include the ability for consumers to choose among the color/opacity options. The decoder must display the color/opacity chosen by the caption provider unless the viewer chooses otherwise.

(o) *Background Color and Opacity.*

(1) Decoders must implement the following background colors: white, black, red, green, blue, yellow, magenta and cyan. It is recommended that this background is extended beyond the character foreground to a degree that the foreground is separated from the underlying video by a sufficient number of background pixels to insure the foreground is separated from the background.

(2) Decoders must implement transparent, translucent, solid and flashing background type attributes. Caption providers may specify the color/opacity. Decoders must include the ability for consumers to choose among the color/opacity options. The decoder must display the color/opacity chosen by the caption provider unless the viewer chooses otherwise.

(p) *Character Edges.* Decoders must implement separate edge color and type attribute control.

(q) *Color Representation.* (1) At a minimum, decoders must support the 8 colors listed in Table 6.

| Color   | Red | Green | Blue |
|---------|-----|-------|------|
| Black   | 0   | 0     | 0    |
| White   | 2   | 2     | 2    |
| Red     | 2   | 0     | 0    |
| Green   | 0   | 2     | 0    |
| Blue    | 0   | 0     | 2    |
| Yellow  | 2   | 2     | 0    |
| Magenta | 2   | 0     | 2    |
| Cyan    | 0   | 2     | 2    |

Table 6 Minimum Color List Table

(2) When a decoder supporting this Minimum Color List receives an RGB value not in the list, it will map the received value to one of the values in the list via the following algorithm:

- All one (1) values are to be changed to 0
- All two (2) values are to remain unchanged
- All three (3) values are to be changed to 2

For example, the RGB value (1,2,3) will be mapped to (0,2,2), (3,3,3) will be mapped to (2,2,2) and (1,1,1) will be mapped to (0,0,0).

(3) Table 7 is an alternative minimum color list table supporting 22 colors.

| Color          | Red | Green | Blue |
|----------------|-----|-------|------|
| Black          | 0   | 0     | 0    |
| Gray           | 1   | 1     | 1    |
| White          | 2   | 2     | 2    |
| Bright White   | 3   | 3     | 3    |
| Dark Red       | 1   | 0     | 0    |
| Red            | 2   | 0     | 0    |
| Bright Red     | 3   | 0     | 0    |
| Dark Green     | 0   | 1     | 0    |
| Green          | 0   | 2     | 0    |
| Bright Green   | 0   | 3     | 0    |
| Dark Blue      | 0   | 0     | 1    |
| Blue           | 0   | 0     | 2    |
| Bright Blue    | 0   | 0     | 3    |
| Dark Yellow    | 1   | 1     | 0    |
| Yellow         | 2   | 2     | 0    |
| Bright Yellow  | 3   | 3     | 0    |
| Dark Magenta   | 1   | 0     | 1    |
| Magenta        | 2   | 0     | 2    |
| Bright Magenta | 3   | 0     | 3    |
| Dark Cyan      | 0   | 1     | 1    |
| Cyan           | 0   | 2     | 2    |
| Bright Cyan    | 0   | 3     | 3    |

Table 7 Alternative Minimum Color List Table

When a decoder supporting the Alternative Minimum Color List in Table 7 receives an RGB value not in the list (i.e., an RGB value whose non-zero elements are not the same value), it will map the received value to one of the values in the list via the following algorithm:

- For RGB values with all elements non-zero and different - e.g., (1,2,3), (3,2,1), and (2,1,3), the 1 value will be changed to 0, the 2 value will remain unchanged, and the 3 value will be changed to 2.
- For RGB values with all elements non-zero and with two common elements - e.g. (3,1,3), (2,1,2), and (2,2,3), if the common elements are 3 and the uncommon one is 1, then the 1 elements is changed to 0; e.g. (3,1,3) -> (3,0,3). If the common elements are 1 and the uncommon element is 3, then the 1 elements are changed to 0, and the 3 element is changed to 2; e.g. (1,3,1) -> (0,2,0). In all other cases, the uncommon element is changed to the common value; e.g., (2,2,3) -> (2,2,2), (1,2,1) -> (1,1,1), and (3,2,3) -> (3,3,3).

All decoders not supporting either one of the two color lists described above, must support the full 64 possible RGB color value combinations.

(r) *Character Rendition Considerations.* In NTSC Closed Captioning, decoders were required to insert leading and trailing spaces on each caption row. There were two reasons for this requirement:

(i) to provide a buffer so that the first and last characters of a caption row do not fall outside the safe title area, and

(ii) to provide a black border on each side of a character so that the “white” leading pixels of the first character on a row and the trailing “white” pixels of the last character on a row do not bleed into the underlying video.

Since caption windows are required to reside in the safe title area of the DTV screen, reason i (above) is not applicable to DTVCC captions.

The attributes available in the **SetPenAttributes** command for character rendition (e.g., character background and edge attributes) provide unlimited flexibility to the caption provider when describing caption text in an ideal decoder implementation. However, manufacturers need not implement all pen attributes. Thus it is recommended that no matter what the level of implementation, decoder manufacturers should take into account the readability of all caption text against a variety of all video backgrounds, and should implement some automatic character delineation when the individual control of character foreground, background and edge is not supported.

(s) *Service Synchronization.* Service Input Buffers must be at least 128 bytes in size. Caption providers must keep this lower limit in mind when following Delay commands with other commands and window text. In other words, no more than 128 bytes of DTVCC commands and text should be transmitted (encoded) before a pending Delay command’s delay interval expires.

(t) *Settings.* Decoders must include an option that permits a viewer to choose a setting that will display captions as intended by the caption provider (a default). Decoders must also include an option that allows a viewer’s chosen settings to remain until the viewer chooses to alter these settings, including periods when the television is turned off.

#### Section 15.123 Labeling of digital cable ready products.

(a) The requirements of this section shall apply to unidirectional digital cable products. Unidirectional digital cable products are one-way devices that accept a Point of Deployment module (POD) and which include, but are not limited to televisions, set-top-boxes and recording devices connected to digital cable systems. Unidirectional digital cable products do not include interactive two-way digital television products.

(b) A unidirectional digital cable product may not be labeled with or marketed using the term “digital cable ready,” or other terminology that describes the device as “cable ready” or “cable compatible,” or otherwise indicates that the device accepts a POD or conveys the impression that the device is compatible with digital cable service unless it implements at a minimum the following features:

(1) Tunes NTSC analog channels transmitted in-the-clear.

(2) Tunes digital channels that are transmitted in compliance with SCTE 40 2003 (formerly DVS 313): “Digital Cable Network Interface Standard” (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38), provided, however, that with respect to Table B.11 of that standard, the phase noise requirement shall be -86 dB/Hz including both in-the-clear channels and channels that are subject to conditional access.

(3) Allows navigation of channels based on channel information (virtual channel map and source names) provided through the cable system in compliance with ANSI/SCTE 65 2002 (formerly DVS 234): “Service Information Delivered Out-of-Band for Digital Cable Television” (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38), and/or PSIP-enabled navigation (ANSI/SCTE 54 2003 (formerly DVS 241): “Digital Video Service Multiplex and Transport System Standard for Cable Television” (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38)).

(4) Includes the POD-Host Interface specified in SCTE 28 2003 (formerly DVS 295): “Host-POD Interface Standard” (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38), and SCTE 41 2003 (formerly DVS 301): “POD Copy Protection System” (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38), or implementation of a more advanced POD-Host Interface based on successor standards. Support for Internet protocol flows is not required.

(5) Responds to emergency alerts that are transmitted in compliance with ANSI/SCTE 54 2003 (formerly DVS 241): “Digital Video Service Multiplex and Transport System Standard for Cable Television” (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38).

(6) In addition to the above requirements, a unidirectional digital cable television may not be labeled or marketed as digital cable ready or with other terminology as described in paragraph (b) of this section, unless it includes a DTV broadcast tuner as set forth in §15.117(i) and employs at least one specified interface in accordance with the following schedule:

(i) For 480p grade unidirectional digital cable televisions, either a DVI/HDCP, HDMI/HDCP, or 480p Y,Pb,Pr interface:

(A) Models with screen sizes 36 inches and above: 50% of a manufacturer's or importer's models manufactured or imported after July 1, 2004; 100% of such models manufactured or imported after July 1, 2005.

(B) Models with screen sizes 32 to 35 inches: 50% of a manufacturer's or importer's models manufactured or imported after July 1, 2005; 100% of such models manufactured or imported after July 1, 2006.

(ii) For 720p/1080i grade unidirectional digital cable televisions, either a DVI/HDCP or HDMI/HDCP interface:

(A) Models with screen sizes 36 inches and above: 50% of a manufacturer's or importer's models manufactured or imported after July 1, 2004; 100% of such models manufactured or imported after July 1, 2005.

(B) Models with screen sizes 25 to 35 inches: 50% of a manufacturer's or importer's models manufactured or imported after July 1, 2005; 100% of such models manufactured or imported after July 1, 2006.

(C) Models with screen sizes 13 to 24 inches: 100% of a manufacturer's or importer's models manufactured or imported after July 1, 2007.

(c) Before a manufacturer's or importer's first unidirectional digital cable product may be labeled or marketed as digital cable ready or with other terminology as described in paragraph (b) of this section, the manufacturer or importer shall verify the device as follows:

(1) The manufacturer or importer shall have a sample of its first model of a unidirectional digital cable product tested to show compliance with the procedures set forth in Uni-Dir-PICS-I01-030903: "Uni-Directional Receiving Device: Conformance Checklist: PICS Proforma" (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38) at a qualified test facility. The manufacturer or importer shall have any modifications to the product to correct failures of the procedures in Uni-Dir-PICS-I01-030903: "Uni-Directional Receiving Device: Conformance Checklist: PICS Proforma" (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38) retested at a qualified test facility.

(2) A qualified test facility is a facility representing cable television system operators serving a majority of the cable television subscribers in the United States or an independent laboratory with personnel knowledgeable with respect to the standards referenced in paragraph (b) of this section concerning the procedures set forth in Uni-Dir-PICS-I01-030903: "Uni-Directional Receiving Device: Conformance Checklist: PICS Proforma" (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38).

(3) Subsequent to the testing of its initial unidirectional digital cable product model, a manufacturer or importer is not required to have other models of unidirectional digital cable products tested at a qualified test facility for compliance with the procedures of Uni-Dir-PICS-I01-030903: "Uni-Directional Receiving Device: Conformance Checklist: PICS Proforma" (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38). However, the manufacturer or importer shall ensure that all subsequent models of unidirectional digital cable products comply with the procedures in the Uni-Dir-PICS-I01-030903: "Uni-Directional Receiving Device: Conformance Checklist: PICS Proforma" (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38) and all other applicable rules and standards. The manufacturer or importer shall maintain records indicating such compliance in accordance with the verification procedure requirements in part 2, subpart J of this chapter. The manufacturer or importer shall further submit documentation verifying compliance with the procedures in the Uni-Dir-PICS-I01-030903: "Uni-Directional Receiving Device: Conformance Checklist: PICS Proforma" (incorporated by reference, see § 15.38) to a facility representing cable television system operators serving a majority of the cable television subscribers in the United States.

(d) Manufacturers and importers shall provide in appropriate post-sale material that describes the features and functionality of the product, such as the owner's guide, the following language: "This digital television is capable of receiving analog basic, digital basic and digital premium cable television programming by direct connection to a cable system providing such programming. A security card provided by your cable operator is required to view encrypted digital programming. Certain advanced and interactive digital cable services such as video-on-demand, a cable operator's enhanced program guide

and data-enhanced television services may require the use of a set-top box. For more information call your local cable operator.”

### Subpart C - Intentional Radiators

#### Section 15.201 Equipment authorization requirement.

(a) Intentional radiators operated as carrier current systems, devices operated under the provisions of §§ 15.211, 15.213 and 15.221, and devices operating below 490 kHz in which all emissions are at least 40 dB below the limits in Section 15.209 shall be verified pursuant to the procedures in Subpart J of Part 2 of this Chapter prior to marketing.

(b) Except as otherwise exempted in paragraph (c) of this Section and in Section 15.23 of this Part, all intentional radiators operating under the provisions of this Part shall be certificated by the Commission pursuant to the procedures in Subpart J of Part 2 of this Chapter prior to marketing.

(c) For devices such as perimeter protection systems which, in accordance with Section 15.31(d), are required to be measured at the installation site, each application for certification must be accompanied by a statement indicating that the system has been tested at three installations and found to comply at each installation. Until such time as certification is granted, a given installation of a system that was measured for the submission for certification will be considered to be in compliance with the provisions of this Chapter, including the marketing regulations in Subpart I of Part 2, if tests at that installation show the system to be in compliance with the relevant technical requirements. Similarly, where measurements must be performed on site for equipment subject to verification, a given installation that has been verified to demonstrate compliance with the applicable standards will be considered to be in compliance with the provisions of this Chapter, including the marketing regulations in Subpart I of Part 2.

(d) For perimeter protection systems operating in the frequency bands allocated to television broadcast stations operating under Part 73 of this Chapter, the holder of the grant of certification must test each installation prior to initiation of normal operation to verify compliance with the technical standards and must maintain a list of all installations and records of measurements. For perimeter protection systems operating outside of the frequency bands allocated to television broadcast stations, upon receipt of a grant of certification, further testing of the same or similar type of system or installation is not required.

#### Section 15.202 Certified operating frequency range.

Client devices that operate in a master/client network may be certified if they have the capability of operating outside permissible Part 15 frequency bands, provided they operate on only permissible Part 15 frequencies under the control of the master device with which they communicate. Master devices marketed within the United States must be limited to operation on permissible Part 15 frequencies. Client devices that can also act as master devices must meet the requirements of a master device. For the purposes of this section, a master device is defined as a device operating in a mode in which it has the capability to transmit without receiving an enabling signal. In this mode it is able to select a channel and initiate a network by sending enabling signals to other devices. A network always has at least one device operating in master mode. A client device is defined as a device operating in a mode in which the transmissions of the device are under control of the master. A device in client mode is not able to initiate a network.

#### Section 15.203 Antenna requirement.

An intentional radiator shall be designed to ensure that no antenna other than that furnished by the responsible party shall be used with the device. The use of a permanently attached antenna or of an antenna that uses a unique coupling to the intentional radiator shall be considered sufficient to comply with the provisions of this Section. The manufacturer may design the unit so that a broken antenna can be replaced by the user, but the use of a standard antenna jack or electrical connector is prohibited. This requirement does not apply to carrier current devices or to devices operated under the provisions of Sections 15.211, 15.213, 15.217, 15.219, or 15.221. Further, this requirement does not apply to intentional radiators that must be professionally installed, such as perimeter protection systems and some field disturbance sensors, or to other intentional radiators which, in accordance with Section 15.31(d), must be measured at the installation site. However, the installer shall be responsible for ensuring that the proper antenna is employed so that the limits in this Part are not exceeded.

Section 15.204 External radio frequency power amplifiers and antenna modifications.

(a) Except as otherwise described in paragraph (b) and (d) of this section, no person shall use, manufacture, sell or lease, offer for sale or lease (including advertising for sale or lease), or import, ship, or distribute for the purpose of selling or leasing, any external radio frequency power amplifier or amplifier kit intended for use with a Part 15 intentional radiator.

(b) A transmission system consisting of an intentional radiator, an external radio frequency power amplifier, and an antenna, may be authorized, marketed and used under this part. Except as described otherwise in this section, when a transmission system is authorized as a system, it must always be marketed as a complete system and must always be used in the configuration in which it was authorized. [Note – the system referenced in the latter sentence may or may not include an amplifier.]

(c) An intentional radiator may be operated only with the antenna with which it is authorized. If an antenna is marketed with the intentional radiator, it shall be of a type which is authorized with the intentional radiator. An intentional radiator may be authorized with multiple antenna types.

(1) The antenna type, as used in this paragraph, refers to antennas that have similar in-band and out-of-band radiation patterns.

(2) Compliance testing shall be performed using the highest gain antenna for each type of antenna to be certified with the intentional radiator. During this testing, the intentional radiator shall be operated at its maximum available output power level.

(3) Manufacturers shall supply a list of acceptable antenna types with the application for equipment authorization of the intentional radiator.

(4) Any antenna that is of the same type and of equal or less directional gain as an antenna that is authorized with the intentional radiator may be marketed with, and used with, that intentional radiator. No retesting of this system configuration is required. The marketing or use of a system configuration that employs an antenna of a different type, or that operates at a higher gain, than the antenna authorized with the intentional radiator is not permitted unless the procedures specified in Section 2.1043 of this chapter are followed.

(d) Except as described in this paragraph, an external radio frequency power amplifier or amplifier kit shall be marketed only with the system configuration with which it was approved and not as a separate product.

(1) An external radio frequency power amplifier may be marketed for individual sale provided it is intended for use in conjunction with a transmitter that operates in the 902 – 928 MHz, 2400 – 2483.5 MHz, and 5725 – 5850 MHz bands pursuant to § 15.247 of this part or a transmitter that operates in the 5.725 – 5.825 GHz band pursuant to § 15.407 of this part. The amplifier must be of a design such that it can only be connected as part of a system in which it has been previously authorized. (The use of a non-standard connector or a form of electronic system identification is acceptable.) The output power of such an amplifier must not exceed the maximum permitted output power of its associated transmitter.

(2) The outside packaging and user manual for external radio frequency power amplifiers sold in accordance with paragraph (d)(1) must include notification that the amplifier can be used only in a system which it has obtained authorization. Such a notice must identify the authorized system by FCC Identifier.

#### Section 15.205 Restricted bands of operation.

(a) Except as shown in paragraph (d) of this section, only spurious emissions are permitted in any of the frequency bands listed below:

| MHz                        | MHz                   | MHz             | GHz              |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 0.090 - 0.110              | 16.42 - 16.423        | 399.9 - 410     | 4.5 - 5.15       |
| <sup>1</sup> 0.495 - 0.505 | 16.69475 - 16.69525   | 608 - 614       | 5.35 - 5.46      |
| 2.1735 - 2.1905            | 16.80425 - 16.80475   | 960 - 1240      | 7.25 - 7.75      |
| 4.125 - 4.128              | 25.5 - 25.67          | 1300 - 1427     | 8.025 - 8.5      |
| 4.17725 - 4.17775          | 37.5 - 38.25          | 1435 - 1626.5   | 9.0 - 9.2        |
| 4.20725 - 4.20775          | 73 - 74.6             | 1645.5 - 1646.5 | 9.3 - 9.5        |
| 6.215 - 6.218              | 74.8 - 75.2           | 1660 - 1710     | 10.6 - 12.7      |
| 6.26775 - 6.26825          | 108 - 121.94          | 1718.8 - 1722.2 | 13.25 - 13.4     |
| 6.31175 - 6.31225          | 123 - 138             | 2200 - 2300     | 14.47 - 14.5     |
| 8.291 - 8.294              | 149.9 - 150.05        | 2310 - 2390     | 15.35 - 16.2     |
| 8.362 - 8.366              | 156.52475 - 156.52525 | 2483.5 - 2500   | 17.7 - 21.4      |
| 8.37625 - 8.38675          | 156.7 - 156.9         | 2690 - 2900     | 22.01 - 23.12    |
| 8.41425 - 8.41475          | 162.0125 - 167.17     | 3260 - 3267     | 23.6 - 24.0      |
| 12.29 - 12.293             | 167.72 - 173.2        | 3332 - 3339     | 31.2 - 31.8      |
| 12.51975 - 12.52025        | 240 - 285             | 3345.8 - 3358   | 36.43 - 36.5     |
| 12.57675 - 12.57725        | 322 - 335.4           | 3600 - 4400     | ( <sup>2</sup> ) |
| 13.36 - 13.41              |                       |                 |                  |

<sup>1</sup> Until February 1, 1999, this restricted band shall be 0.490-0.510 MHz.

<sup>2</sup> Above 38.6

(b) Except as provided in paragraphs (d) and (e), the field strength of emissions appearing within these frequency bands shall not exceed the limits shown in Section 15.209. At frequencies equal to or less than 1000 MHz, compliance with the limits in Section 15.209 shall be demonstrated using measurement instrumentation employing a CISPR quasi-peak detector. Above 1000 MHz, compliance with the emission limits in Section 15.209 shall be demonstrated based on the average value of the measured emissions. The provisions in Section 15.35 apply to these measurements.

(c) Except as provided in paragraphs (d) and (e), regardless of the field strength limits specified elsewhere in this Subpart, the provisions of this Section apply to emissions from any intentional radiator.

(d) The following devices are exempt from the requirements of this Section:

(1) Swept frequency field disturbance sensors operating between 1.705 and 37 MHz provided their emissions only sweep through the bands listed in paragraph (a), the sweep is never stopped with the fundamental emission within the bands listed in paragraph (a), and the fundamental emission is outside of the bands listed in paragraph (a) more than 99% of the time the device is actively transmitting, without compensation for duty cycle.

(2) Transmitters used to detect buried electronic markers at 101.4 kHz which are employed by telephone companies.

(3) Cable locating equipment operated pursuant to Section 15.213.

(4) Any equipment operated under the provisions of § 15.253, § 15.255 or § 15.257 of this part.

(5) Biomedical telemetry devices operating under the provisions of Section 15.242 of this part are not subject to the restricted band 608-614 MHz but are subject to compliance within the other restricted bands.

(6) Transmitters operating under the provisions of Subpart D or F of this Part.

(7) Devices operated pursuant to § 15.225 are exempt from complying with this section for the 13.36-13.41 MHz band only.

(8) Devices operated in the 24.075-24.175 GHz band under § 15.245 are exempt from complying with the requirements of this section for the 48.15-48.35 GHz and 72.225-72.525 GHz bands only, and shall not exceed the limits specified in § 15.245(b).

(9) Devices operated in the 24.0-24.25 GHz band under § 15.249 are exempt from complying with the requirements of this section for the 48.0-48.5 GHz and 72.0-72.75 GHz bands only, and shall not exceed the limits specified in § 15.249(a).

(e) Harmonic emissions appearing in the restricted bands above 17.7 GHz from field disturbance sensors operating under the provisions of Section 15.245 shall not exceed the limits specified in Section

15.245(b).

Section 15.207 Conducted limits.

(a) Except as shown in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, for an intentional radiator that is designed to be connected to the public utility (AC) power line, the radio frequency voltage that is conducted back onto the AC power line on any frequency or frequencies within the band 150 kHz to 30 MHz shall not exceed the limits in the following table, as measured using a 50  $\mu$ H/50 ohms line impedance stabilization network (LISN). Compliance with the provisions of this paragraph shall be based on the measurement of the radio frequency voltage between each power line and ground at the power terminal. The lower limit applies at the boundary between the frequency ranges.

| Frequency of Emission (MHz) | Conducted Limit (dB $\mu$ V) |            |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|------------|
|                             | Quasi-peak                   | Average    |
| 0.15-0.5                    | 66 to 56 *                   | 56 to 46 * |
| 0.5-5                       | 56                           | 46         |
| 5-30                        | 60                           | 50         |

\* Decreases with the logarithm of the frequency.

(b) The shown limit in paragraph (a) of this Section shall not apply to carrier current systems operating as intentional radiators on frequencies below 30 MHz. In lieu thereof, these carrier current systems shall be subject to the following standards:

(1) For carrier current systems containing their fundamental emission within the frequency band 535-1705 kHz and intended to be received using a standard AM broadcast receiver: no limit on conducted emissions.

(2) For all other carrier current systems: 1000  $\mu$ V within the frequency band 535-1705 kHz, as measured using a 50  $\mu$ H/50 ohms LISN.

(3) Carrier current systems operating below 30 MHz are also subject to the radiated emission limits in Section 15.205 and Section 15.209, 15.221, 15.223, 15.225 or 15.227, as appropriate.

(c) Measurements to demonstrate compliance with the conducted limits are not required for devices which only employ battery power for operation and which do not operate from the AC power lines or contain provisions for operation while connected to the AC power lines. Devices that include, or make provision for, the use of battery chargers which permit operating while charging, AC adaptors or battery eliminators or that connect to the AC power lines indirectly, obtaining their power through another device which is connected to the AC power lines, shall be tested to demonstrate compliance with the conducted limits.

Section 15.209 Radiated emission limits, general requirements.

(a) Except as provided elsewhere in this Subpart, the emissions from an intentional radiator shall not exceed the field strength levels specified in the following table:

| Frequency<br>(MHz) | Field Strength<br>(microvolts/meter) | Measurement Distance<br>(meters) |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 0.009 - 0.490      | 2400/F(kHz)                          | 300                              |
| 0.490 - 1.705      | 24000/F(kHz)                         | 30                               |
| 1.705 - 30.0       | 30                                   | 30                               |
| 30 - 88            | 100 **                               | 3                                |
| 88 - 216           | 150 **                               | 3                                |
| 216 - 960          | 200 **                               | 3                                |
| Above 960          | 500                                  | 3                                |

\*\* Except as provided in paragraph (g), fundamental emissions from intentional radiators operating under this Section shall not be located in the frequency bands 54-72 MHz, 76-88 MHz, 174-216 MHz or 470-806 MHz. However, operation within these frequency bands is permitted under other sections of this Part, e.g., Sections 15.231 and 15.241.

(b) In the emission table above, the tighter limit applies at the band edges.

(c) The level of any unwanted emissions from an intentional radiator operating under these general provisions shall not exceed the level of the fundamental emission. For intentional radiators which operate under the provisions of other Sections within this Part and which are required to reduce their unwanted emissions to the limits specified in this table, the limits in this table are based on the frequency of the unwanted emission and not the fundamental frequency. However, the level of any unwanted emissions shall not exceed the level of the fundamental frequency.

(d) The emission limits shown in the above table are based on measurements employing a CISPR quasi-peak detector except for the frequency bands 9-90 kHz, 110-490 kHz and above 1000 MHz. Radiated emission limits in these three bands are based on measurements employing an average detector.

(e) The provisions in Sections 15.31, 15.33, and 15.35 for measuring emissions at distances other than the distances specified in the above table, determining the frequency range over which radiated emissions are to be measured, and limiting peak emissions apply to all devices operated under this Part.

(f) In accordance with Section 15.33(a), in some cases the emissions from an intentional radiator must be measured to beyond the tenth harmonic of the highest fundamental frequency designed to be emitted by the intentional radiator because of the incorporation of a digital device. If measurements above the tenth harmonic are so required, the radiated emissions above the tenth harmonic shall comply with the general radiated emission limits applicable to the incorporated digital device, as shown in Section 15.109 and as based on the frequency of the emission being measured, or, except for emissions contained in the restricted frequency bands shown in Section 15.205, the limit on spurious emissions specified for the intentional radiator, whichever is the higher limit. Emissions which must be measured above the tenth harmonic of the highest fundamental frequency designed to be emitted by the intentional radiator and which fall within the restricted bands shall comply with the general radiated emission limits in Section 15.109 that are applicable to the incorporated digital device.

(g) Perimeter protection systems may operate in the 54-72 MHz and 76-88 MHz bands under the provisions of this section. The use of such perimeter protection systems is limited to industrial, business and commercial applications.

#### Section 15.211 Tunnel radio systems.

An intentional radiator utilized as part of a tunnel radio system may operate on any frequency provided it meets all of the following conditions:

(a) Operation of a tunnel radio system (intentional radiator and all connecting wires) shall be contained solely within a tunnel, mine or other structure that provides attenuation to the radiated signal due to the presence of naturally surrounding earth and/or water.

(b) Any intentional or unintentional radiator external to the tunnel, mine or other structure, as described in paragraph (a), shall be subject to the other applicable regulations contained within this Part.

(c) The total electromagnetic field from a tunnel radio system on any frequency or frequencies appearing outside of the tunnel, mine or other structure described in paragraph (a) shall not exceed the limits shown in Section 15.209 when measured at the specified distance from the surrounding structure, including openings. Particular attention shall be paid to the emissions from any opening in the structure to the outside environment. When measurements are made from the openings, the distances shown in Section 15.209 refer to the distance from the plane of reference which fits the entire perimeter of each above ground opening.

(d) The conducted limits in Section 15.207 apply to the radio frequency voltage on the public utility power lines outside of the tunnel.

#### Section 15.212 Modular transmitters.

(a) Single modular transmitters consist of a completely self-contained radiofrequency transmitter device that is typically incorporated into another product, host or device. Split modular transmitters consist of two components: a radio front end with antenna (or radio devices) and a transmitter control element (or specific hardware on which the software that controls the radio operation resides). All single or split modular transmitters are approved with an antenna. All of the following requirements apply, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section.

(1) Single modular transmitters must meet the following requirements to obtain a modular transmitter approval.

(i) The radio elements of the modular transmitter must have their own shielding. The physical crystal and tuning capacitors may be located external to the shielded radio elements.

(ii) The modular transmitter must have buffered modulation/data inputs (if such inputs are provided) to ensure that the module will comply with Part 15 requirements under conditions of excessive data rates or over-modulation.

(iii) The modular transmitter must have its own power supply regulation.

(iv) The modular transmitter must comply with the antenna and transmission system requirements of Sections 15.203, 15.204(b) and 15.204(c). The antenna must either be permanently attached or employ a “unique” antenna coupler (at all connections between the module and the antenna, including the cable). The “professional installation” provision of Section 15.203 is not applicable to modules but can apply to limited modular approvals under paragraph (b) of this section.

(v) The modular transmitter must be tested in a stand-alone configuration, *i.e.*, the module must not be inside another device during testing for compliance with Part 15 requirements. Unless the transmitter module will be battery powered, it must comply with the AC line conducted requirements found in Section 15.207. AC or DC power lines and data input/output lines connected to the module must not contain ferrites, unless they will be marketed with the module (see Section 15.27(a)). The length of these lines shall be the length typical of actual use or, if that length is unknown, at least 10 centimeters to insure that there is no coupling between the case of the module and supporting equipment. Any accessories, peripherals, or support equipment connected to the module during testing shall be unmodified and commercially available (see Section 15.31(i)).

(vi) The modular transmitter must be equipped with either a permanently affixed label or must be capable of electronically displaying its FCC identification number.

(A) If using a permanently affixed label, the modular transmitter must be labeled with its own FCC identification number, and, if the FCC identification number is not visible when the module is installed inside another device, then the outside of the device into which the module is installed must also display a label referring to the enclosed module. This exterior label can use wording such as the following: “Contains Transmitter Module FCC ID: XYZMODEL1” or “Contains FCC ID: XYZMODEL1.” Any similar wording that expresses the same meaning may be used. The Grantee may either provide such a label, an example of which must be included in the application for equipment authorization, or, must provide adequate instructions along with the module which explain this requirement. In the latter case, a copy of these instructions must be included in the application for equipment authorization.

(B) If the modular transmitter uses an electronic display of the FCC identification number, the information must be readily accessible and visible on the modular transmitter or on the device in which it is installed. If the module is installed inside another device, then the outside of the device into which the module is installed must display a label referring to the enclosed module. This exterior label can use wording such as the following: “Contains FCC certified transmitter module(s).” Any similar wording that expresses the same meaning may be used. The user manual must include instructions on how to access the electronic display. A copy of these instructions must be included in the application for equipment authorization.

(vii) The modular transmitter must comply with any specific rules or operating requirements that ordinarily apply to a complete transmitter and the manufacturer must provide adequate instructions along with the module to explain any such requirements. A copy of these instructions must be included in the application for equipment authorization.

(viii) The modular transmitter must comply with any applicable RF exposure requirements in its final configuration.

(2) Split modular transmitters must meet the requirements in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, excluding paragraphs (a)(1)(i) and (a)(1)(v), and the following additional requirements to obtain a modular transmitter approval.

(i) Only the radio front end must be shielded. The physical crystal and tuning capacitors may be located external to the shielded radio elements. The interface between the split sections of the modular system must be digital with a minimum signaling amplitude of 150 mV peak-to-peak.

(ii) Control information and other data may be exchanged between the transmitter control elements and radio front end.

(iii) The sections of a split modular transmitter must be tested installed in a host device(s) similar to that which is representative of the platform(s) intended for use.

(iv) Manufacturers must ensure that only transmitter control elements and radio front end components that have been approved together are capable of operating together. The transmitter module must not operate unless it has verified that the installed transmitter control elements and radio front end have been authorized together. Manufacturers may use means including, but not limited to, coding in hardware and electronic signatures in software to meet these requirements, and must describe the methods in their application for equipment authorization.

(b) A limited modular approval may be granted for single or split modular transmitters that do not comply with all of the above requirements, *e.g.*, shielding, minimum signaling amplitude, buffered modulation/data inputs, or power supply regulation, if the manufacturer can demonstrate by alternative means in the application for equipment authorization that the modular transmitter meets all the applicable Part 15 requirements under the operating conditions in which the transmitter will be used. Limited modular approval also may be granted in those instances where compliance with RF exposure rules is demonstrated only for particular product configurations. The applicant for certification must state how control of the end product into which the module will be installed will be maintained such that full compliance of the end product is always ensured.

#### Section 15.213 Cable locating equipment.

An intentional radiator used as cable locating equipment, as defined in Section 15.3(d), may be operated on any frequency within the band 9 - 490 kHz, subject to the following limits: within the frequency band 9 kHz, up to, but not including, 45 kHz, the peak output power from the cable locating equipment shall not exceed 10 watts; and, within the frequency band 45 kHz to 490 kHz, the peak output power from the cable locating equipment shall not exceed one watt. If provisions are made for connection of the cable locating equipment to the AC power lines, the conducted limits in Section 15.207 also apply to this equipment.

#### Section 15.214 Cordless telephones.

(a) For equipment authorization, a single application form, FCC Form 731, may be filed for a cordless telephone system, provided the application clearly identifies and provides data for all parts of the system to show compliance with the applicable technical requirements. When a single application form is submitted, both the base station and the portable handset must carry the same FCC identifier. The application shall include a fee for certification of each type of transmitter and for certification, if appropriate, for each type of receiver included in the system.

(b) A cordless telephone which is intended to be connected to the public switched telephone network shall also comply with the applicable regulations in Part 68 of this Chapter. A separate application for registration under Part 68 of this Chapter is required.

(c) The label required under Subpart A of this Part shall also contain the following statement: "Privacy of communications may not be ensured when using this phone."

(d) Cordless telephones shall incorporate circuitry which makes use of a digital security code to provide protection against unintentional access to the public switched telephone network by the base unit and unintentional ringing by the handset. These functions shall operate such that each access of the telephone network or ringing of the handset is preceded by the transmission of a code word. Access to the telephone network shall occur only if the code transmitted by the handset matches the code set in the base unit. Similarly, ringing of the handset shall occur only if the code transmitted by the base unit matches the code set in the handset. The security code required by this Section may also be employed to perform other communications functions, such as providing telephone billing information. This security code system is to operate in accordance with the following provisions.

(1) There must be provision for at least 256 possible discrete digital codes. Factory-set codes must be continuously varied over at least 256 possible codes as each telephone is manufactured. The codes may be varied either randomly, sequentially, or using another systematic procedure.

(2) Manufacturers must use one of the following approaches for facilitating variation in the geographic distribution of individual security codes:

(i) Provide a means for the user to readily select from among at least 256 possible discrete digital codes. The cordless telephone shall be either in a non-operable mode after manufacture until the user selects a security code or the manufacturer must continuously vary the initial security code as each telephone is produced.

(ii) Provide a fixed code that is continuously varied among at least 256 discrete digital codes as each telephone is manufactured.

(iii) Provide a means for the cordless telephone to automatically select a different code from among at least 256 possible discrete digital codes each time it is activated.

(iv) It is permissible to provide combinations of fixed, automatic, and user-selectable coding provided the above criteria are met.

(3) A statement of the means and procedures used to achieve the required protection shall be provided in any application for equipment authorization of a cordless telephone.

#### Radiated Emission Limits, Additional Provisions

##### Section 15.215 Additional provisions to the general radiated emission limitations.

(a) The regulations in §§ 15.217-15.257 provide alternatives to the general radiated emission limits for intentional radiators operating in specified frequency bands. Unless otherwise stated, there are no restrictions as to the types of operation permitted under these sections.

(b) In most cases, unwanted emissions outside of the frequency bands shown in these alternative provisions must be attenuated to the emission limits shown in Section 15.209. In no case shall the level of the unwanted emissions from an intentional radiator operating under these additional provisions exceed the field strength of the fundamental emission.

(c) Intentional radiators operating under the alternative provisions to the general emission limits, as contained in §§ 15.217 through 15.257 and in Subpart E of this part, must be designed to ensure that the 20 dB bandwidth of the emission, or whatever bandwidth may otherwise be specified in the specific rule section under which the equipment operates, is contained within the frequency band designated in the rule section under which the equipment is operated. The requirement to contain the designated bandwidth of the emission within the specified frequency band includes the effects from frequency sweeping, frequency hopping and other modulation techniques that may be employed as well as the frequency stability of the transmitter over expected variations in temperature and supply voltage. If a frequency stability is not specified in the regulations, it is recommended that the fundamental emission be kept within at least the central 80% of the permitted band in order to minimize the possibility of out-of-band operation.

##### Section 15.217 Operation in the band 160 - 190 kHz.

(a) The total input power to the final radio frequency stage (exclusive of filament or heater power) shall not exceed one watt.

(b) The total length of the transmission line, antenna, and ground lead (if used) shall not exceed 15 meters.

(c) All emissions below 160 kHz or above 190 kHz shall be attenuated at least 20 dB below the level of the unmodulated carrier. Determination of compliance with the 20 dB attenuation specification may be based on measurements at the intentional radiator's antenna output terminal unless the intentional radiator uses a permanently attached antenna, in which case compliance shall be demonstrated by measuring the radiated emissions.

##### Section 15.219 Operation in the band 510 - 1705 kHz.

(a) The total input power to the final radio frequency stage (exclusive of filament or heater

power) shall not exceed 100 milliwatts.

(b) The total length of the transmission line, antenna and ground lead (if used) shall not exceed 3 meters.

(c) All emissions below 510 kHz or above 1705 kHz shall be attenuated at least 20 dB below the level of the unmodulated carrier. Determination of compliance with the 20 dB attenuation specification may be based on measurements at the intentional radiator's antenna output terminal unless the intentional radiator uses a permanently attached antenna, in which case compliance shall be demonstrated by measuring the radiated emissions.

#### Section 15.221 Operation in the band 525 - 1705 kHz.

(a) Carrier current systems and transmitters employing a leaky coaxial cable as the radiating antenna may operate in the band 525-1705 kHz provided the field strength levels of the radiated emissions do not exceed 15  $\mu\text{V/m}$ , as measured at a distance of  $47,715/(\text{frequency in kHz})$  meters (equivalent to  $\text{Lambda}/2\text{Pi}$ ) from the electric power line or the coaxial cable, respectively. The field strength levels of emissions outside this band shall not exceed the general radiated emission limits in Section 15.209.

(b) As an alternative to the provisions in paragraph (a), intentional radiators used for the operation of an AM broadcast station on a college or university campus or on the campus of any other education institution may comply with the following:

(1) On the campus, the field strength of emissions appearing outside of this frequency band shall not exceed the general radiated emission limits shown in Section 15.209 as measured from the radiating source. There is no limit on the field strength of emissions appearing within this frequency band, except that the provisions of Section 15.5 continue to comply.

(2) At the perimeter of the campus, the field strength of any emissions, including those within the frequency band 525 - 1705 kHz, shall not exceed the general radiated emissions in Section 15.209.

(3) The conducted limits specified in Section 15.207 apply to the radio frequency voltage on the public utility power lines outside of the campus. Due to the large number of radio frequency devices which may be used on the campus, contributing to the conducted emissions, as an alternative to measuring conducted emissions outside of the campus, it is acceptable to demonstrate compliance with this provision by measuring each individual intentional radiator employed in the system at the point where it connects to the AC power lines.

(c) A grant of equipment authorization is not required for intentional radiators operated under the provisions of this Section. In lieu thereof, the intentional radiator shall be verified for compliance with the regulations in accordance with Subpart J of Part 2 of this Chapter. This data shall be kept on file at the location of the studio, office or control room associated with the transmitting equipment. In some cases, this may correspond to the location of the transmitting equipment.

(d) For the band 535-1705 kHz, the frequency of operation shall be chosen such that operation is not within the protected field strength contours of licensed AM stations.

Section 15.223 Operation in the band 1.705 - 10 MHz.

(a) The field strength of any emission within the band 1.705-10.0 MHz shall not exceed 100 microvolts/meter at a distance of 30 meters. However, if the bandwidth of the emission is less than 10% of the center frequency, the field strength shall not exceed 15 microvolts/meter or (the bandwidth of the device in kHz) divided by (the center frequency of the device in MHz) microvolts/meter at a distance of 30 meters, whichever is the higher level. For the purposes of this Section, bandwidth is determined at the points 6 dB down from the modulated carrier. The emission limits in this paragraph are based on measurement instrumentation employing an average detector. The provisions in Section 15.35(b) for limiting peak emissions apply.

(b) The field strength of emissions outside of the band 1.705-10.0 MHz shall not exceed the general radiated emission limits in Section 15.209.

Section 15.225 Operation within the band 13.110 – 14.010 MHz.

(a) The field strength of any emissions within the band 13.553-13.567 MHz shall not exceed 15,848 microvolts/meter at 30 meters.

(b) Within the bands 13.410-13.553 MHz and 13.567-13.710 MHz, the field strength of any emissions shall not exceed 334 microvolts/meter at 30 meters.

(c) Within the bands 13.110-13.410 MHz and 13.710-14.010 MHz the field strength of any emissions shall not exceed 106 microvolts/meter at 30 meters.

(d) The field strength of any emissions appearing outside of the 13.110-14.010 MHz band shall not exceed the general radiated emission limits in § 15.209.

(e) The frequency tolerance of the carrier signal shall be maintained within +/- 0.01% of the operating frequency over a temperature variation of -20 degrees to +50 degrees C at normal supply voltage, and for a variation in the primary supply voltage from 85% to 115% of the rated supply voltage at a temperature of 20 degrees C. For battery operated equipment, the equipment tests shall be performed using a new battery.

(f) In the case of radio frequency powered tags designed to operate with a device authorized under this section, the tag may be approved with the device or be considered as a separate device subject to its own authorization. Powered tags approved with a device under a single application shall be labeled with the same identification number as the device.

Section 15.227 Operation within the band 26.96 - 27.28 MHz.

(a) The field strength of any emission within this band shall not exceed 10,000 microvolts/meter at 3 meters. The emission limit in this paragraph is based on measurement instrumentation employing an

average detector. The provisions in Section 15.35 for limiting peak emissions apply.

(b) The field strength of any emissions which appear outside of this band shall not exceed the general radiated emission limits in Section 15.209.

Section 15.229 Operation within the band 40.66 - 40.70 MHz.

(a) Unless operating pursuant to the provisions in Section 15.231, the field strength of any emissions within this band shall not exceed 1000 microvolts/meter at 3 meters.

(b) As an alternative to the limit in paragraph (a), perimeter protection systems may demonstrate compliance with the following: the field strength of any emissions within this band shall not exceed 500 microvolts/meter at 3 meters, as determined using measurement instrumentation employing an average detector. The provisions in Section 15.35 for limiting peak emissions apply where compliance of these devices is demonstrated under this alternative emission limit.

(c) The field strength of any emissions appearing outside of this band shall not exceed the general radiated emission limits in Section 15.209.

(d) The frequency tolerance of the carrier signal shall be maintained within  $\pm 0.01\%$  of the operating frequency over a temperature variation of -20 degrees to + 50 degrees C at normal supply voltage, and for a variation in the primary supply voltage from 85% to 115% of the rated supply voltage at a temperature of 20 degrees C. For battery operated equipment, the equipment tests shall be performed using a new battery.

Section 15.231 Periodic operation in the band 40.66 - 40.70 MHz and above 70 MHz.

(a) The provisions of this Section are restricted to periodic operation within the band 40.66 - 40.70 MHz and above 70 MHz. Except as shown in paragraph (e) of this Section, the intentional radiator is restricted to the transmission of a control signal such as those used with alarm systems, door openers, remote switches, etc. Continuous transmissions, voice, video and the radio control of toys are not permitted. Data is permitted to be sent with a control signal. The following conditions shall be met to comply with the provisions for this periodic operation:

(1) A manually operated transmitter shall employ a switch that will automatically deactivate the transmitter within not more than 5 seconds of being released.

(2) A transmitter activated automatically shall cease transmission within 5 seconds after activation.

(3) Periodic transmissions at regular predetermined intervals are not permitted. However, polling or supervision transmissions, including data, to determine system integrity of transmitters used in security or safety applications are allowed if the total duration of transmissions does not exceed more than two seconds per hour for each transmitter. There is no limit on the number of individual transmissions, provided the total transmission time does not exceed two seconds per hour.

(4) Intentional radiators which are employed for radio control purposes during emergencies involving fire, security, and safety of life, when activated to signal an alarm, may operate during the pendency of the alarm condition.

(5) Transmission of set-up information for security systems may exceed the transmission duration limits in paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(2) of this section, provided such transmission are under the control of a professional installer and do not exceed ten seconds after a manually operated switch is released or a transmitter is activated automatically. Such set-up information may include data.

(b) In addition to the provisions of Section 15.205, the field strength of emissions from intentional radiators operated under this Section shall not exceed the following:

| Fundamental Frequency (MHz) | Field Strength of Fundamental (microvolts/meter) | Field Strength of Spurious Emissions (microvolts/meter) |
|-----------------------------|--|---|
| 40.66 - 40.70               | 2,250  | 225   |
| 70 - 130                    | 1,250  | 125   |
| 130 - 174                   | 1,250 to 3,750 **                                | 125 to 375 **   |
| 174 - 260                   | 3,750  | 375   |
| 260 - 470                   | 3,750 to 12,500 **                               | 375 to 1,250 **   |
| Above 470                   | 12,500   | 1,250   |

\*\* linear interpolations

[Where F is the frequency in MHz, the formulas for calculating the maximum permitted fundamental field strengths are as follows: for the band 130-174 MHz,  $\mu\text{V/m}$  at 3 meters =  $56.81818(F) - 6136.3636$ ; for the band 260-470 MHz,  $\mu\text{V/m}$  at 3 meters =  $41.6667(F) - 7083.3333$ . The maximum permitted unwanted emission level is 20 dB below the maximum permitted fundamental level.]

(1) The above field strength limits are specified at a distance of 3 meters. The tighter limits apply at the band edges.

(2) Intentional radiators operating under the provisions of this Section shall demonstrate compliance with the limits on the field strength of emissions, as shown in the above table, based on the average value of the measured emissions. As an alternative, compliance with the limits in the above table may be based on the use of measurement instrumentation with a CISPR quasi-peak detector. The specific method of measurement employed shall be specified in the application for equipment authorization. If average emission measurements are employed, the provisions in Section 15.35 for averaging pulsed emissions and for limiting peak emissions apply. Further, compliance with the provisions of Section 15.205 shall be demonstrated using the measurement instrumentation specified in that section.

(3) The limits on the field strength of the spurious emissions in the above table are based on the fundamental frequency of the intentional radiator. Spurious emissions shall be attenuated to the average (or, alternatively, CISPR quasi-peak) limits shown in this table or to the general limits shown in

Section 15.209, whichever limit permits a higher field strength.

(c) The bandwidth of the emission shall be no wider than 0.25% of the center frequency for devices operating above 70 MHz and below 900 MHz. For devices operating above 900 MHz, the emission shall be no wider than 0.5% of the center frequency. Bandwidth is determined at the points 20 dB down from the modulated carrier.

(d) For devices operating within the frequency band 40.66 - 40.70 MHz, the bandwidth of the emission shall be confined within the band edges and the frequency tolerance of the carrier shall be  $\pm 0.01\%$ . This frequency tolerance shall be maintained for a temperature variation of -20 degrees to +50 degrees C at normal supply voltage, and for a variation in the primary supply voltage from 85% to 115% of the rated supply voltage at a temperature of 20 degrees C. For battery operated equipment, the equipment tests shall be performed using a new battery.

(e) Intentional radiators may operate at a periodic rate exceeding that specified in paragraph (a) and may be employed for any type of operation, including operation prohibited in paragraph (a), provided the intentional radiator complies with the provisions of paragraphs (b) through (d) of this Section, except the field strength table in paragraph (b) is replaced by the following:

| Fundamental Frequency (MHz) | Field Strength of Fundamental (microvolts/meter) | Field Strength of Spurious Emission (microvolts/meter) |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| 40.66 - 40.70               | 1,000  | 100  |
| 70 - 130                    | 500  | 50   |
| 130 - 174                   | 500 to 1,500 **                                  | 50 to 150 **   |
| 174 - 260                   | 1,500  | 150  |
| 260 - 470                   | 1,500 to 5,000 **                                | 150 to 500 **  |
| Above 470                   | 5,000  | 500  |

\*\* linear interpolations

[Where F is the frequency in MHz, the formulas for calculating the maximum permitted fundamental field strengths are as follows: for the band 130-174 MHz,  $\mu\text{V/m}$  at 3 meters =  $22.72727(F) - 2454.545$ ; for the band 260-470 MHz,  $\mu\text{V/m}$  at 3 meters =  $16.6667(F) - 2833.3333$ . The maximum permitted unwanted emission level is 20 dB below the maximum permitted fundamental level.]

In addition, devices operated under the provisions of this paragraph shall be provided with a means for automatically limiting operation so that the duration of each transmission shall not be greater than one second and the silent period between transmissions shall be at least 30 times the duration of the transmission but in no case less than 10 seconds.

Section 15.233 Operation within the bands 43.71 - 44.49 MHz, 46.60 - 46.98 MHz, 48.75 - 49.51 MHz and 49.66 - 50.0 MHz.

(a) The provisions shown in this Section are restricted to cordless telephones.

(b) An intentional radiator used as part of a cordless telephone system shall operate centered on one or more of the following frequency pairs, subject to the following conditions:

(1) Frequencies shall be paired as shown below, except that channel pairing for channels one through fifteen may be accomplished by pairing any of the fifteen base transmitter frequencies with any of the fifteen handset transmitter frequencies.

(2) Cordless telephones operating on channels one through fifteen must: (i) incorporate an automatic channel selection mechanism that will prevent establishment of a link on any occupied frequency and (ii) the box or an instruction manual which is included within the box which the individual cordless telephone is to be marketed shall contain information indicating that some cordless telephones operate at frequencies that may cause interference to nearby TVs and VCRs; to minimize or prevent such interference, the base of the cordless telephone should not be placed near or on top of a TV or VCR; and, if interference is experienced, moving the cordless telephone farther away from the TV or VCR will often reduce or eliminate the interference. A statement describing the means and procedures used to achieve automatic channel selection shall be provided in any application for equipment authorization of a cordless telephone operating on channels one through fifteen.

| Channel | Base Transmitter<br>(MHz) | Handset Transmitter<br>(MHz) |
|---------|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1       | 43.720                    | 48.760                       |
| 2       | 43.740                    | 48.840                       |
| 3       | 43.820                    | 48.860                       |
| 4       | 43.840                    | 48.920                       |
| 5       | 43.920                    | 49.020                       |
| 6       | 43.960                    | 49.080                       |
| 7       | 44.120                    | 49.100                       |
| 8       | 44.160                    | 49.160                       |
| 9       | 44.180                    | 49.200                       |
| 10      | 44.200                    | 49.240                       |
| 11      | 44.320                    | 49.280                       |
| 12      | 44.360                    | 49.360                       |
| 13      | 44.400                    | 49.400                       |
| 14      | 44.460                    | 49.460                       |
| 15      | 44.480                    | 49.500                       |
| 16      | 46.610                    | 49.670                       |
| 17      | 46.630                    | 49.845                       |
| 18      | 46.670                    | 49.860                       |
| 19      | 46.710                    | 49.770                       |
| 20      | 46.730                    | 49.875                       |
| 21      | 46.770                    | 49.830                       |
| 22      | 46.830                    | 49.890                       |

|    |        |        |
|----|--------|--------|
| 23 | 46.870 | 49.930 |
| 24 | 46.930 | 49.990 |
| 25 | 46.970 | 49.970 |

---

(c) The field strength of the fundamental emission shall not exceed 10,000 microvolts/meter at 3 meters. The emission limit in this paragraph is based on measurement instrumentation employing an average detector. The provisions in Section 15.35 for limiting peak emissions apply.

(d) The fundamental emission shall be confined within a 20 kHz band and shall be centered on a carrier frequency shown above, as adjusted by the frequency tolerance of the transmitter at the time testing is performed. Modulation products outside of this 20 kHz band shall be attenuated at least 26 dB below the level of the unmodulated carrier or to the general limits in Section 15.209, whichever permits the higher emission levels. Emissions on any frequency more than 20 kHz removed from the center frequency shall consist solely of unwanted emissions and shall not exceed the general radiated emission limits in Section 15.209. Tests to determine compliance with these requirements shall be performed using an appropriate input signal as prescribed in Section 2.989 of this Chapter.

(e) All emissions exceeding 20 microvolts/meter at 3 meters are to be reported in the application for certification.

(f) If the device provides for the connection of external accessories, including external electrical input signals, the device must be tested with the accessories attached. The emission tests shall be performed with the device and accessories configured in a manner which tends to produce the maximum level of emissions within the range of variations that can be expected under normal operating conditions.

(g) The frequency tolerance of the carrier signal shall be maintained within  $\pm 0.01\%$  of the operating frequency. The tolerance shall be maintained for a temperature variation of -20 degrees C to +50 degrees C at normal supply voltage, and for variation in the primary voltage from 85% to 115% of the rated supply voltage at a temperature of 20 degrees C. For battery operated equipment, the equipment tests shall be performed using a new battery.

(h) For cordless telephones that do not comply with Section 15.214(d) of this Part, the box or other package in which the individual cordless telephone is to be marketed shall carry a statement in a prominent location, visible to the buyer before purchase, which reads as follows:

NOTICE: The base units of some cordless telephones may respond to other nearby units or to radio noise resulting in telephone calls being dialed through this unit without your knowledge and possibly calls being misbilled. In order to protect against such occurrences, this cordless telephone is provided with the following features: (to be completed by the responsible party).

An application for certification of a cordless telephone shall specify the complete text of the statement that will be carried on the package and indicate where, specifically, it will be located on the carton.

Section 15.235 Operation within the band 49.82 - 49.90 MHz.

(a) The field strength of any emission within this band shall not exceed 10,000 microvolts/meter at 3 meters. The emission limit in this paragraph is based on measurement instrumentation employing an average detector. The provisions in Section 15.35 for limiting peak emissions apply.

(b) The field strength of any emissions appearing between the band edges and up to 10 kHz above and below the band edges shall be attenuated at least 26 dB below the level of the unmodulated carrier or to the general limits in Section 15.209, whichever permits the higher emission levels. The field strength of any emissions removed by more than 10 kHz from the band edges shall not exceed the general radiated emission limits in Section 15.209. All signals exceeding 20 microvolts/meter at 3 meters shall be reported in the application for certification.

(c) For a home-built intentional radiator, as defined in Section 15.23(a), operating within the band 49.82-49.90 MHz, the following standards may be employed:

(1) The RF carrier and modulation products shall be maintained within the band 49.82-49.90 MHz.

(2) The total input power to the device measured at the battery or the power line terminals shall not exceed 100 milliwatts under any condition of modulation.

(3) The antenna shall be a single element, one meter or less in length, permanently mounted on the enclosure containing the device.

(4) Emissions outside of this band shall be attenuated at least 20 dB below the level of the unmodulated carrier.

(5) The regulations contained in Section 15.23 of this Part apply to intentional radiators constructed under the provisions of this paragraph.

(d) Cordless telephones are not permitted to operate under the provisions of this Section.

Section 15.237 Operation in the bands 72.0 - 73.0 MHz, 74.6 - 74.8 MHz and 75.2 - 76.0 MHz.

(a) The intentional radiator shall be restricted to use as an auditory assistance device.

(b) Emissions from the intentional radiator shall be confined within a band 200 kHz wide centered on the operating frequency. The 200 kHz band shall lie wholly within the above specified frequency ranges.

(c) The field strength of any emissions within the permitted 200 kHz band shall not exceed 80 millivolts/meter at 3 meters. The field strength of any emissions radiated on any frequency outside of the specified 200 kHz band shall not exceed 1500 microvolts/meter at 3 meters. The emission limits in this paragraph are based on measurement instrumentation employing an average detector. The provisions in Section 15.35 for limiting peak emissions apply.

Section 15.239 Operation in the band 88 - 108 MHz.

(a) Emissions from the intentional radiator shall be confined within a band 200 kHz wide centered on the operating frequency. The 200 kHz band shall lie wholly within the frequency range of 88-108 MHz.

(b) The field strength of any emissions within the permitted 200 kHz band shall not exceed 250 microvolts/meter at 3 meters. The emission limit in this paragraph is based on measurement instrumentation employing an average detector. The provisions in Section 15.35 for limiting peak emissions apply.

(c) The field strength of any emissions radiated on any frequency outside of the specified 200 kHz band shall not exceed the general radiated emission limits in Section 15.209.

(d) A custom built telemetry intentional radiator operating in the frequency band of 88-108 MHz and used for experimentation by an educational institute need not be certified provided the device complies with the standards in this Part and the educational institution notifies the Engineer in Charge of the local FCC office, in writing, in advance of operation, providing the following information:

- (1) The dates and places where the device will be operated;
- (2) The purpose for which the device will be used;
- (3) A description of the device, including the operating frequency, RF power output, and antenna; and,
- (4) A statement that the device complies with the technical provisions of this Part.

Section 15.240 Operation in the band 433.5-434.5 MHz.

(a) Operation under the provisions of this section is restricted to devices that use radio frequency energy to identify the contents of commercial shipping containers. Operations must be limited to commercial and industrial areas such as ports, rail terminals and warehouses. Two-way operation is permitted to interrogate and to load data into devices. Devices operated pursuant to the provisions of this section shall not be used for voice communications.

(b) The field strength of any emissions radiated within the specified frequency band shall not exceed 11,000 microvolts per meter measured at a distance of 3 meters. The emission limit in this paragraph is based on measurement instrumentation employing an average detector. The peak level of any emissions within the specified frequency band shall not exceed 55,000 microvolts per meter measured at a distance of 3 meters. Additionally, devices authorized under these provisions shall be provided with a means for automatically limiting operation so that the duration of each transmission shall not be greater than 60 seconds and be only permitted to reinitiate an interrogation in the case of a transmission error. Absent such a transmission error, the silent period between transmissions shall not be less than 10 seconds.

(c) The field strength of emissions radiated on any frequency outside of the specified band shall not exceed the general radiated emission limits in § 15.209.

(d) In the case of radio frequency powered tags designed to operate with a device authorized under this section, the tag may be approved with the device or be considered as a separate device subject to its own authorization. Powered tags approved with a device under a single application shall be labeled with the same identification number as the device.

(e) To prevent interference to Federal Government radar systems, operation under the provisions of this section is not permitted within 40 kilometers of the following locations:

| DoD Radar Site             | Latitude      | Longitude      |
|----------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| Beale Air Force Base       | 39° 08' 10" N | 121° 21' 04" W |
| Cape Cod Air Force Station | 41° 45' 07" N | 070° 32' 17" W |
| Clear Air Force Station    | 64° 55' 16" N | 143° 05' 02" W |
| Cavalier Air Force Station | 48° 43' 12" N | 097° 54' 00" W |
| Eglin Air Force Base       | 30° 43' 12" N | 086° 12' 36" W |

(f) As a condition of the grant, the grantee of an equipment authorization for a device operating under the provisions of this section shall provide information to the user concerning compliance with the operational restrictions in paragraphs (a) and (e) of this section. As a further condition, the grantee shall provide information on the locations where the devices are installed to the FCC Office of Engineering and Technology, which shall provide this information to the Federal Government through the National Telecommunications and Information Administration. The user of the device shall be responsible for submitting updated information in the event the operating location or other information changes after the initial registration. The grantee shall notify the user of this requirement. The information provided by the grantee or user to the Commission shall include the name, address, telephone number and e-mail address of the user, the address and geographic coordinates of the operating location, and the FCC identification number of the device. The material shall be submitted to the following address:

Experimental Licensing Branch, OET  
Federal Communications Commission  
445 12<sup>th</sup> Street, S.W.  
Washington, D.C. 20554

ATTN: RFID Registration

Section 15.241 Operation in the band 174 - 216 MHz.

[See Section 15.37(i).]

(a) Operation under the provisions of this Section is restricted to biomedical telemetry devices.

(b) Emissions from the device shall be confined within a 200 kHz band which shall lie wholly within the frequency range of 174-216 MHz.

(c) The field strength of any emissions radiated within the specified 200 kHz band shall not exceed 1500 microvolts/meter at 3 meters. The field strength of emissions radiated on any frequency outside of the specified 200 kHz band shall not exceed 150 microvolts/meter at 3 meters. The emission limits in this paragraph are based on measurement instrumentation employing an average detector. The provisions in Section 15.35 for limiting peak emissions apply.

Section 15.242 Operation in the bands 174-216 MHz and 470-668 MHz.

[See Section 15.37(i).]

(a) The marketing and operation of intentional radiators under the provisions of this section is restricted to biomedical telemetry devices employed solely on the premises of health care facilities.

(1) A health care facility includes hospitals and other establishments that offer services, facilities, and beds for use beyond 24 hours in rendering medical treatment and institutions and organizations regularly engaged in providing medical services through clinics, public health facilities, and similar establishments, including governmental entities and agencies for their own medical activities.

(2) This authority to operate does not extend to mobile vehicles, such as ambulances, even if those vehicles are associated with a health care facility.

(b) The fundamental emissions from a biomedical telemetry device operating under the provisions of this section shall be contained within a single television broadcast channel, as defined in Part 73 of this chapter, under all conditions of operation and shall lie wholly within the frequency ranges of 174-216 MHz and 470-668 MHz.

(c) The field strength of the fundamental emissions shall not exceed 200 mV/m, as measured at a distance of 3 meters using a quasi-peak detector. Manufacturers should note that a quasi-peak detector function indicates field strength per 120 kHz of bandwidth  $\pm$  20 kHz. Accordingly, the total signal level over the band of operation may be higher than 200 mV/m. The field strength of emissions radiated on any frequency outside of the television broadcast channel within which the fundamental is contained shall not exceed the general limits in Section 15.209.

(d) The user and the installer of a biomedical telemetry device operating within the frequency range 174-216 MHz, 470-608 MHz or 614-668 MHz shall ensure that the following minimum separation distances are maintained between the biomedical telemetry device and the authorized radio services operating on the same frequencies:

(1) At least 10.3 km outside of the Grade B field strength contour (56 dB $\mu$ V/m) of a TV broadcast station or an associated TV booster station operating within the band 174-216 MHz.

(2) At least 5.5 km outside of the Grade B field strength contour (64 dB $\mu$ V/m) of a TV broadcast station or an associated TV booster station operating within the bands 470-608 MHz or 614-668 MHz.

(3) At least 5.1 km outside of the 68 dB $\mu$ V/m field strength contour of a low power TV

or a TV translator station operating within the band 174-216 MHz.

(4) At least 3.1 km outside of the 74 dB $\mu$ V/m field strength contour of a low power TV or a TV translator station operating within the bands 470-608 MHz or 614-668 MHz.

(5) Whatever distance is necessary to protect other authorized users within these bands.

(e) The user and the installer of a biomedical telemetry device operating within the frequency range 608-614 MHz and that will be located within 32 km of the very long baseline array (VLBA) stations or within 80 km of any of the other radio astronomy observatories noted in footnote US 311 of Section 2.106 of this chapter must coordinate with, and obtain the written concurrence of, the director of the affected radio astronomy observatory before the equipment can be installed or operated. The National Science Foundation point of contact for coordination is: Spectrum Manager, Division of Astronomical Sciences, NSF Rm 1045, 4201 Wilson Blvd., Arlington, VA 22230; tel: (703) 306-1823.

(f) Biomedical telemetry devices must not cause harmful interference to licensed TV broadcast stations or to other authorized radio services, such as operations on the broadcast frequencies under Subparts G and H of Part 74 of this chapter, land mobile stations operating under Part 90 of this chapter in the 470-512 MHz band, and radio astronomy operation in the 608-614 MHz band. (See Section 15.5.) If harmful interference occurs, the interference must either be corrected or the device must immediately cease operation on the occupied frequency. Further, the operator of the biomedical telemetry device must accept whatever level of interference is received from other radio operations. The operator, *i.e.*, the health care facility, is responsible for resolving any interference that occurs subsequent to the installation of these devices.

(g) The manufacturers, installers, and users of biomedical telemetry devices are reminded that they must ensure that biomedical telemetry transmitters operating under the provisions of this section avoid operating in close proximity to authorized services using this spectrum. Sufficient separation distance, necessary to avoid causing or receiving harmful interference, must be maintained from co-channel operations. These parties are reminded that the frequencies of the authorized services are subject to change, especially during the implementation of the digital television services. The operating frequencies of the Part 15 devices may need to be changed, as necessary and in accordance with the permissive change requirements of this chapter, to accommodate changes in the operating frequencies of the authorized services.

(h) The manufacturers, installers and users of biomedical telemetry devices are cautioned that the operation of this equipment could result in harmful interference to other nearby medical devices.

#### Section 15.243 Operation in the band 890 - 940 MHz.

(a) Operation under the provisions of this Section is restricted to devices that use radio frequency energy to measure the characteristics of a material. Devices operated pursuant to the provisions of this Section shall not be used for voice communications or the transmission of any other type of message.

(b) The field strength of any emissions radiated within the specified frequency band shall not exceed 500 microvolts/meter at 30 meters. The emission limit in this paragraph is based on measurement

instrumentation employing an average detector. The provisions in Section 15.35 for limiting peak emissions apply.

(c) The field strength of emissions radiated on any frequency outside of the specified band shall not exceed the general radiated emission limits in Section 15.209.

(d) The device shall be self-contained with no external or readily accessible controls which may be adjusted to permit operation in a manner inconsistent with the provisions in this Section. Any antenna that may be used with the device shall be permanently attached thereto and shall not be readily modifiable by the user.

Section 15.245 Operation within the bands 902 - 928 MHz, 2435 - 2465 MHz, 5785 - 5815 MHz, 10500 - 10550 MHz, and 24075 - 24175 MHz.

(a) Operation under the provisions of this Section is limited to intentional radiators used as field disturbance sensors, excluding perimeter protection systems.

(b) The field strength of emissions from intentional radiators operated within these frequency bands shall comply with the following:

| Fundamental Frequency (MHz) | Field Strength of Fundamental (millivolts/meter) | Field Strength of Harmonics (millivolts/meter) |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| 902 - 928                   | 500  | 1.6  |
| 2435 - 2465                 | 500  | 1.6  |
| 5785 - 5815                 | 500  | 1.6  |
| 10500 - 10550               | 2500   | 25.0   |
| 24075 - 24175               | 2500   | 25.0   |

(1) Regardless of the limits shown in the above table, harmonic emissions in the restricted bands below 17.7 GHz, as specified in § 15.205, shall not exceed the field strength limits shown in § 15.209. Harmonic emissions in the restricted bands at and above 17.7 GHz shall not exceed the following field strength limits:

(i) For the second and third harmonics of field disturbance sensors operating in the 24075-24175 MHz band and for other field disturbance sensors designed for use only within a building or to open building doors, 25.0 mV/m.

(ii) For all other field disturbance sensors, 7.5 mV/m.

(iii) Field disturbance sensors designed to be used in motor vehicles or aircraft must include features to prevent continuous operation unless their emissions in the restricted bands, other than the second and third harmonics from devices operating in the 24075-24175 MHz band, fully comply

with the limits given in § 15.209. Continuous operation of field disturbance sensors designed to be used in farm equipment, vehicles such as fork lifts that are intended primarily for use indoors or for very specialized operations, or railroad locomotives, railroad cars and other equipment which travels on fixed tracks is permitted. A field disturbance sensor will be considered not to be operating in a continuous mode if its operation is limited to specific activities of limited duration (e.g., putting a vehicle into reverse gear, activating a turn signal, etc.).

(2) Field strength limits are specified at a distance of 3 meters.

(3) Emissions radiated outside of the specified frequency bands, except for harmonics, shall be attenuated by at least 50 dB below the level of the fundamental or to the general radiated emission limits in Section 15.209, whichever is the lesser attenuation.

(4) The emission limits shown in the above table are based on measurement instrumentation employing an average detector. The provisions in Section 15.35 for limiting peak emissions apply.

Section 15.247 Operation within the bands 902 - 928 MHz, 2400 - 2483.5 MHz, and 5725 - 5850 MHz.

(a) Operation under the provisions of this Section is limited to frequency hopping and digitally modulated intentional radiators that comply with the following provisions:

(1) Frequency hopping systems shall have hopping channel carrier frequencies separated by a minimum of 25 kHz or the 20 dB bandwidth of the hopping channel, whichever is greater. Alternatively, frequency hopping systems operating in the 2400-2483.5 MHz band may have hopping channel carrier frequencies that are separated by 25 kHz or two-thirds of the 20 dB bandwidth of the hopping channel, whichever is greater, provided the systems operate with an output power no greater than 125 mW. The system shall hop to channel frequencies that are selected at the system hopping rate from a pseudorandomly ordered list of hopping frequencies. Each frequency must be used equally on the average by each transmitter. The system receivers shall have input bandwidths that match the hopping channel bandwidths of their corresponding transmitters and shall shift frequencies in synchronization with the transmitted signals.

(i) For frequency hopping systems operating in the 902-928 MHz band: if the 20 dB bandwidth of the hopping channel is less than 250 kHz, the system shall use at least 50 hopping frequencies and the average time of occupancy on any frequency shall not be greater than 0.4 seconds within a 20 second period; if the 20 dB bandwidth of the hopping channel is 250 kHz or greater, the system shall use at least 25 hopping frequencies and the average time of occupancy on any frequency shall not be greater than 0.4 seconds within a 10 second period. The maximum allowed 20 dB bandwidth of the hopping channel is 500 kHz.

(ii) Frequency hopping systems operating in the 5725-5850 MHz band shall use at least 75 hopping frequencies. The maximum 20 dB bandwidth of the hopping channel is 1 MHz. The average time of occupancy on any frequency shall not be greater than 0.4 seconds within a 30 second period.

(iii) Frequency hopping systems in the 2400-2483.5 MHz band shall use at least 15 channels. The average time of occupancy on any channel shall not be greater than 0.4 seconds within a period of 0.4 seconds multiplied by the number of hopping channels employed. Frequency hopping systems may avoid or suppress transmissions on a particular hopping frequency provided that a minimum of 15 channels are used.

(2) Systems using digital modulation techniques may operate in the 902 - 928 MHz, 2400 - 2483.5 MHz, and 5725 - 5850 MHz bands. The minimum 6 dB bandwidth shall be at least 500 kHz.

(b) The maximum peak conducted output power of the intentional radiator shall not exceed the following:

(1) For frequency hopping systems operating in the 2400-2483.5 MHz band employing at least 75 non-overlapping hopping channels, and all frequency hopping systems in the 5725-5850 MHz band: 1 watt. For all other frequency hopping systems in the 2400-2483.5 MHz band: 0.125 watts.

(2) For frequency hopping systems operating in the 902-928 MHz band: 1 watt for systems employing at least 50 hopping channels; and, 0.25 watts for systems employing less than 50 hopping channels, but at least 25 hopping channels, as permitted under paragraph (a)(1)(i) of this section.

(3) For systems using digital modulation in the 902-928 MHz, 2400-2483.5 MHz, and 5725-5850 MHz bands: 1 Watt. As an alternative to a peak power measurement, compliance with the one Watt limit can be based on a measurement of the maximum conducted output power. Maximum Conducted Output Power is defined as the total transmit power delivered to all antennas and antenna elements averaged across all symbols in the signaling alphabet when the transmitter is operating at its maximum power control level. Power must be summed across all antennas and antenna elements. The average must not include any time intervals during which the transmitter is off or is transmitting at a reduced power level. If multiple modes of operation are possible (e.g., alternative modulation methods), the *maximum conducted output power* is the highest total transmit power occurring in any mode.

(4) The conducted output power limit specified in paragraph (b) of this section is based on the use of antennas with directional gains that do not exceed 6 dBi. Except as shown in paragraph (c) of this section, if transmitting antennas of directional gain greater than 6 dBi are used, the conducted output power from the intentional radiator shall be reduced below the stated values in paragraphs (b)(1), (b)(2), and (b)(3) of this section, as appropriate, by the amount in dB that the directional gain of the antenna exceeds 6 dBi.

(c) Operation with directional antenna gains greater than 6 dBi.

(1) Fixed point-to-point operation:

(i) Systems operating in the 2400-2483.5 MHz band that are used exclusively for fixed, point-to-point operations may employ transmitting antennas with directional gain greater than 6 dBi provided the maximum conducted output power of the intentional radiator is reduced by 1 dB for every 3 dB that the directional gain of the antenna exceeds 6 dBi.

(ii) Systems operating in the 5725-5850 MHz band that are used exclusively for fixed, point-to-point operations may employ transmitting antennas with directional gain greater than 6 dBi without any corresponding reduction in transmitter conducted output power.

(iii) Fixed, point-to-point operation, as used in paragraphs (c)(1)(i) and (c)(1)(ii) of this section, excludes the use of point-to-multipoint systems, omnidirectional applications, and multiple co-located intentional radiators transmitting the same information. The operator of the spread spectrum or digitally modulated intentional radiator or, if the equipment is professionally installed, the installer is responsible for ensuring that the system is used exclusively for fixed, point-to-point operations. The instruction manual furnished with the intentional radiator shall contain language in the installation instructions informing the operator and the installer of this responsibility.

(2) In addition to the provisions in paragraphs (b)(1), (b)(3), (b)(4) and (c)(1)(i) of this section, transmitters operating in the 2400-2483.5 MHz band that emit multiple directional beams, simultaneously or sequentially, for the purpose of directing signals to individual receivers or to groups of receivers provided the emissions comply with the following:

(i) Different information must be transmitted to each receiver.

(ii) If the transmitter employs an antenna system that emits multiple directional beams but does not do [the word “do” should be deleted from this sentence] emit multiple directional beams simultaneously, the total output power conducted to the array or arrays that comprise the device, i.e., the sum of the power supplied to all antennas, antenna elements, staves, etc. and summed across all carriers or frequency channels, shall not exceed the limit specified in paragraph (b)(1) or (b)(3) of this section, as applicable. However, the total conducted output power shall be reduced by 1 dB below the specified limits for each 3 dB that the directional gain of the antenna/antenna array exceeds 6 dBi. The directional antenna gain shall be computed as follows:

(A) The directional gain shall be calculated as the sum of  $10 \log$  (number of array elements or staves) plus the directional gain of the element or staff having the highest gain.

(B) A lower value for the directional gain than that calculated in paragraph (c)(2)(ii)(A) of this section will be accepted if sufficient evidence is presented, e.g., due to shading of the array or coherence loss in the beamforming.

(iii) If a transmitter employs an antenna that operates simultaneously on multiple directional beams using the same or different frequency channels, the power supplied to each emission beam is subject to the power limit specified in paragraph (c)(2)(ii) of this section. If transmitted beams overlap, the power shall be reduced to ensure that their aggregate power does not exceed the limit specified in paragraph (c)(2)(ii) of this section. In addition, the aggregate power transmitted simultaneously on all beams shall not exceed the limit specified in paragraph (c)(2)(ii) of this section by more than 8 dB.

(iv) Transmitters that emit a single directional beam shall operate under the

provisions of paragraph (c)(1) of this section.

(d) In any 100 kHz bandwidth outside the frequency band in which the spread spectrum or digitally modulated intentional radiator is operating, the radio frequency power that is produced by the intentional radiator shall be at least 20 dB below that in the 100 kHz bandwidth within the band that contains the highest level of the desired power, based on either an RF conducted or a radiated measurement, provided the transmitter demonstrates compliance with the peak conducted power limits. If the transmitter complies with the conducted power limits based on the use of RMS averaging over a time interval, as permitted under paragraph (b)(3) of this section, the attenuation required under this paragraph shall be 30 dB instead of 20 dB. Attenuation below the general limits specified in Section 15.209(a) is not required. In addition, radiated emissions which fall in the restricted bands, as defined in Section 15.205(a), must also comply with the radiated emission limits specified in Section 15.209(a) (see Section 15.205(c)).

(e) For digitally modulated systems, the power spectral density conducted from the intentional radiator to the antenna shall not be greater than 8 dBm in any 3 kHz band during any time interval of continuous transmission. This power spectral density shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (b) of this section. The same method of determining the conducted output power shall be used to determine the power spectral density.

(f) For the purposes of this section, hybrid systems are those that employ a combination of both frequency hopping and digital modulation techniques. The frequency hopping operation of the hybrid system, with the direct sequence or digital modulation operation turned off, shall have an average time of occupancy on any frequency not to exceed 0.4 seconds within a time period in seconds equal to the number of hopping frequencies employed multiplied by 0.4. The digital modulation operation of the hybrid system, with the frequency hopping turned off, shall comply with the power density requirements of paragraph (d) of this section.

(g) Frequency hopping spread spectrum systems are not required to employ all available hopping channels during each transmission. However, the system, consisting of both the transmitter and the receiver, must be designed to comply with all of the regulations in this section should the transmitter be presented with a continuous data (or information) stream. In addition, a system employing short transmission bursts must comply with the definition of a frequency hopping system and must distribute its transmissions over the minimum number of hopping channels specified in this section.

(h) The incorporation of intelligence within a frequency hopping spread spectrum system that permits the system to recognize other users within the spectrum band so that it individually and independently chooses and adapts its hopsets to avoid hopping on occupied channels is permitted. The coordination of frequency hopping systems in any other manner for the express purpose of avoiding the simultaneous occupancy of individual hopping frequencies by multiple transmitters is not permitted.

(i) Systems operating under the provisions of this section shall be operated in a manner that ensures that the public is not exposed to radio frequency energy levels in excess of the Commission's guidelines. See § 1.1307(b)(1) of this Chapter.

Note: Spread spectrum systems are sharing these bands on a noninterference basis with systems

supporting critical Government requirements that have been allocated the usage of these bands, secondary only to ISM equipment operated under the provisions of Part 18 of this Chapter. Many of these Government systems are airborne radiolocation systems that emit a high EIRP which can cause interference to other users. Also, investigations of the effect of spread spectrum interference to U. S. Government operations in the 902-928 MHz band may require a future decrease in the power limits allowed for spread spectrum operation.

Section 15.249 Operation within the bands 902 - 928 MHz, 2400 - 2483.5 MHz, 5725 - 5875 MHz, and 24.0 - 24.25 GHz.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, the field strength of emissions from intentional radiators operated within these frequency bands shall comply with the following:

| Fundamental Frequency | Field Strength of Fundamental (millivolts/meter) | Field Strength of Harmonics (microvolts/meter) |
|-----------------------|--|--|
| 902 - 928 MHz         | 50   | 500  |
| 2400 - 2483.5 MHz     | 50   | 500  |
| 5725 - 5875 MHz       | 50   | 500  |
| 24.0 - 24.25 GHz      | 250  | 2500   |

(b) Fixed, point-to-point operation as referred to in this paragraph shall be limited to systems employing a fixed transmitter transmitting to a fixed remote location. Point-to-multipoint systems, omnidirectional applications, and multiple co-located intentional radiators transmitting the same information are not allowed. Fixed, point-to-point operation is permitted in the 24.05-24.25 GHz band subject to the following conditions:

(1) The field strength of emissions in this band shall not exceed 2500 millivolts/meter.

(2) The frequency tolerance of the carrier signal shall be maintained within  $\pm 0.001\%$  of the operating frequency over a temperature variation of  $-20$  degrees to  $+50$  degrees C at normal supply voltage, and for a variation in the primary supply voltage from 85% to 115% of the rated supply voltage at a temperature of 20 degrees C. For battery operated equipment, the equipment tests shall be performed using a new battery.

(3) Antenna gain must be at least 33 dBi. Alternatively, the main lobe beamwidth must not exceed 3.5 degrees. The beamwidth limit shall apply to both the azimuth and elevation planes. At antenna gains over 33 dBi or beamwidths narrower than 3.5 degrees, power must be reduced to ensure that the field strength does not exceed 2500 millivolts/meter.

(c) Field strength limits are specified at a distance of 3 meters.

(d) Emissions radiated outside of the specified frequency bands, except for harmonics, shall be

attenuated by at least 50 dB below the level of the fundamental or to the general radiated emission limits in Section 15.209, whichever is the lesser attenuation.

(e) As shown in Section 15.35(b), for frequencies above 1000 MHz, the above field strength limits in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section are based on average limits. However, the peak field strength of any emission shall not exceed the maximum permitted average limits specified above by more than 20 dB under any condition of modulation. For point-to-point operation under paragraph (b) of this section, the peak field strength shall not exceed 2500 millivolts/meter at 3 meters along the antenna azimuth.

(f) Parties considering the manufacture, importation, marketing or operation of equipment under this section should also note the requirement in Section 15.37(d).

Section 15.250 Operation of wideband systems within the band 5925-7250 MHz.

(a) The -10 dB bandwidth of a device operating under the provisions of this section must be contained within the 5925-7250 MHz band under all conditions of operation including the effects from stepped frequency, frequency hopping or other modulation techniques that may be employed as well as the frequency stability of the transmitter over expected variations in temperature and supply voltage.

(b) The -10 dB bandwidth of the fundamental emission shall be at least 50 MHz. For transmitters that employ frequency hopping, stepped frequency or similar modulation types, measurement of the -10 dB minimum bandwidth specified in this paragraph shall be made with the frequency hop or step function disabled and with the transmitter operating continuously at a fundamental frequency following the provisions of Section 15.31(m) of this part.

(c) Operation on board an aircraft or a satellite is prohibited. Devices operating under this section may not be employed for the operation of toys. Except for operation onboard a ship or a terrestrial transportation vehicle, the use of a fixed outdoor infrastructure is prohibited. A fixed infrastructure includes antennas mounted on outdoor structures, *e.g.*, antennas mounted on the outside of a building or on a telephone pole.

(d) Emissions from a transmitter operating under this section shall not exceed the following equivalent isotropically radiated power (EIRP) density levels:

(1) The radiated emissions above 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following RMS average limits based on measurements using a 1 MHz resolution bandwidth:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 960-1610         | -75.3       |
| 1610-1990        | -63.3       |
| 1990-3100        | -61.3       |
| 3100-5925        | -51.3       |
| 5925-7250        | -41.3       |

|             |       |
|-------------|-------|
| 7250-10600  | -51.3 |
| Above 10600 | -61.3 |

(2) In addition to the radiated emission limits specified in the table in paragraph (d)(1) of this section, transmitters operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following RMS average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of no less than 1 kHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1164-1240        | -85.3       |
| 1559-1610        | -85.3       |

(3) There is a limit on the peak level of the emissions contained within a 50 MHz bandwidth centered on the frequency at which the highest radiated emission occurs and this 50 MHz bandwidth must be contained within the 5925-7250 MHz band. The peak EIRP limit is  $20 \log(\text{RBW}/50)$  dBm where RBW is the resolution bandwidth in megahertz that is employed by the measurement instrument. RBW shall not be lower than 1 MHz or greater than 50 MHz. The video bandwidth of the measurement instrument shall not be less than RBW. If RBW is greater than 3 MHz, the application for certification filed with the Commission shall contain a detailed description of the test procedure, calibration of the test setup, and the instrumentation employed in the testing.

(4) Radiated emissions at or below 960 MHz shall not exceed the emission levels in Section 15.209 of this part.

(5) Emissions from digital circuitry used to enable the operation of the transmitter may comply with the limits in Section 15.209 of this chapter provided it can be clearly demonstrated that those emissions are due solely to emissions from digital circuitry contained within the transmitter and the emissions are not intended to be radiated from the transmitter's antenna. Emissions from associated digital devices, as defined in Section 15.3(k) of this chapter, *e.g.*, emissions from digital circuitry used to control additional functions or capabilities other than the operation of the transmitter, are subject to the limits contained in Subpart B of Part 15 of this chapter. Emissions from these digital circuits shall not be employed in determining the -10 dB bandwidth of the fundamental emission or the frequency at which the highest emission level occurs.

(e) Measurement procedures:

(1) All emissions at and below 960 MHz are based on measurements employing a CISPR quasi-peak detector. Unless otherwise specified, all RMS average emission levels specified in this section are to be measured utilizing a 1 MHz resolution bandwidth with a one millisecond dwell over each 1 MHz segment. The frequency span of the analyzer should equal the number of sampling bins times 1 MHz and the sweep rate of the analyzer should equal the number of sampling bins times one millisecond. The provision in Section 15.35(c) of this part that allows emissions to be averaged over a 100 millisecond period does not apply to devices operating under this section. The video bandwidth of the measurement instrument shall not be less than the resolution bandwidth and trace averaging shall not be employed. The RMS average emission measurement is to be repeated over multiple sweeps with the analyzer set for maximum hold until the amplitude stabilizes.

(2) The peak emission measurement is to be repeated over multiple sweeps with the analyzer set for maximum hold until the amplitude stabilizes.

(3) For transmitters that employ frequency hopping, stepped frequency or similar modulation types, the peak emission level measurement, the measurement of the RMS average emission levels, and the measurement to determine the frequency at which the highest level emission occurs shall be made with the frequency hop or step function active. Gated signals may be measured with the gating active. The provisions of Section 15.31(c) of this part continue to apply to transmitters that employ swept frequency modulation.

(4) The -10 dB bandwidth is based on measurement using a peak detector, a 1 MHz resolution bandwidth, and a video bandwidth greater than or equal to the resolution bandwidth.

(5) Alternative measurement procedures may be considered by the Commission.

Section 15.251 Operation within the bands 2.9 - 3.26 GHz, 3.267 - 3.332 GHz, 3.339 - 3.3458 GHz, and 3.358 - 3.6 GHz.

(a) Operation under the provisions of this Section is limited to automatic vehicle identification systems (AVIS) which use swept frequency techniques for the purpose of automatically identifying transportation vehicles.

(b) The field strength anywhere within the frequency range swept by the signal shall not exceed 3000 microvolts/meter/MHz at 3 meters in any direction. Further, an AVIS, when in its operating position, shall not produce a field strength greater than 400 microvolts/meter/MHz at 3 meters in any direction within  $\pm 10$  degrees of the horizontal plane. In addition to the provisions of Section 15.205, the field strength of radiated emissions outside the frequency range swept by the signal shall be limited to a maximum of 100 microvolts/meter/MHz at 3 meters, measured from 30 MHz to 20 GHz for the complete system. The emission limits in this paragraph are based on measurement instrumentation employing an average detector. The provisions in Section 15.35 for limiting peak emissions apply.

(c) The minimum sweep repetition rate of the signal shall not be lower than 4000 sweeps per second, and the maximum sweep repetition rate of the signal shall not exceed 50,000 sweeps per second.

(d) An AVIS shall employ a horn antenna or other comparable directional antenna for signal emission.

(e) Provision shall be made so that signal emission from the AVIS shall occur only when the vehicle to be identified is within the radiated field of the system.

(f) In addition to the labelling requirements in Section 15.19(a), the label attached to the AVIS transmitter shall contain a third statement regarding operational conditions, as follows:

... and, (3) during use this device (the antenna) may not be pointed within  $\pm$  \*\* degrees of the horizontal plane.

The double asterisks in condition three (\*\*) shall be replaced by the responsible party with the angular pointing restriction necessary to meet the horizontal emission limit specified in paragraph (b).

(g) In addition to the information required in Subpart J of Part 2, the application for certification shall contain:

(1) Measurements of field strength per MHz along with the intermediate frequency of the spectrum analyzer or equivalent measuring receiver;

(2) The angular separation between the direction at which maximum field strength occurs and the direction at which the field strength is reduced to 400 microvolts/meter/MHz at 3 meters;

(3) A photograph of the spectrum analyzer display showing the entire swept frequency signal and a calibrated scale for the vertical and horizontal axes; the spectrum analyzer settings that were used shall be labelled on the photograph; and,

(4) The results of the frequency search for spurious and sideband emissions from 30 MHz to 20 GHz, exclusive of the swept frequency band, with the measuring instrument as close as possible to the unit under test.

Section 15.252 Operation of wideband vehicular radar systems within the bands 16.2-17.7 GHz and 23.12-29.0 GHz.

(a) Operation under this section is limited to field disturbance sensors that are mounted in terrestrial transportation vehicles. Terrestrial use is limited to earth surface-based, non-aviation applications. Operation within the 16.2-17.7 GHz band is limited to field disturbance sensors that are used only for back-up assistance and that operate only when the vehicle is engaged in reverse.

(1) The -10 dB bandwidth of the fundamental emission shall be located within the 16.2-17.7 GHz band or within the 23.12-29.0 GHz band, exclusive of the 23.6-24.0 GHz restricted band, as appropriate, under all conditions of operation including the effects from stepped frequency, frequency hopping or other modulation techniques that may be employed as well as the frequency stability of the transmitter over expected variations in temperature and supply voltage.

(2) The -10 dB bandwidth of the fundamental emission shall be 10 MHz or greater. For transmitters that employ frequency hopping, stepped frequency or similar modulation types, measurement of the -10 dB minimum bandwidth specified in this paragraph shall be made with the frequency hop or step function disabled and with the transmitter operating continuously at a fundamental frequency following the provisions of Section 15.31(m) of this part.

(3) For systems operating in the 23.12-29.0 GHz band, the frequencies at which the highest average emission level and at which the highest peak level emission appear shall be greater than 24.075 GHz.

(4) These devices shall operate only when the vehicle is operating, *e.g.*, the engine is running. Operation shall occur only upon specific activation, such as upon starting the vehicle, changing

gears, or engaging a turn signal. The operation of these devices shall be related to the proper functioning of the transportation vehicle, *e.g.*, collision avoidance.

(b) Emissions from a transmitter operating under this section shall not exceed the following equivalent isotropically radiated power (EIRP) density levels:

(1) For transmitters operating in the 16.2-17.7 GHz band, the RMS average radiated emissions above 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following EIRP limits based on measurements using a 1 MHz resolution bandwidth:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 960-1610         | -75.3       |
| 1610-16,200      | -61.3       |
| 16,200-17,700    | -41.3       |
| Above 17,700     | -61.3       |

(2) For transmitters operating in the 23.12-29.0 GHz band, the RMS average radiated emissions above 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following EIRP limits based on measurements using a 1 MHz resolution bandwidth:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 960-1610         | -75.3       |
| 1610-23,120      | -61.3       |
| 23,120-23,600    | -41.3       |
| 23,600-24,000    | -61.3       |
| 24,000-29,000    | -41.3       |
| Above 29,000     | -61.3       |

(3) In addition to the radiated emission limits specified in the tables in paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section, transmitters operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following RMS average EIRP limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of no less than 1 kHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1164-1240        | -85.3       |
| 1559-1610        | -85.3       |

(4) There is a limit on the peak level of the emissions contained within a 50 MHz bandwidth centered on the frequency at which the highest radiated emission occurs and this 50 MHz bandwidth must be contained within the 16.2-17.7 GHz band or the 24.05-29.0 GHz band, as appropriate. The peak EIRP limit is  $20 \log (\text{RBW}/50)$  dBm where RBW is the resolution bandwidth in MHz employed by the measurement instrument. RBW shall not be lower than 1 MHz or greater than 50 MHz. Further, RBW shall not be greater than the -10 dB bandwidth of the device under test. For transmitters that employ frequency hopping, stepped frequency or similar modulation types, measurement of the -10 dB minimum bandwidth specified in this paragraph shall be made with the frequency hop or step function disabled and with the transmitter operating continuously at a fundamental frequency. The video bandwidth of the measurement instrument shall not be less than RBW. The limit on peak emissions

applies to the 50 MHz bandwidth centered on the frequency at which the highest level radiated emission occurs. If RBW is greater than 3 MHz, the application for certification shall contain a detailed description of the test procedure, the instrumentation employed in the testing, and the calibration of the test setup.

(5) Radiated emissions at or below 960 MHz shall not exceed the emission levels in Section 15.209 of this part.

(6) Emissions from digital circuitry used to enable the operation of the transmitter may comply with the limits in Section 15.209 of this chapter provided it can be clearly demonstrated that those emissions are due solely to emissions from digital circuitry contained within the transmitter and the emissions are not intended to be radiated from the transmitter's antenna. Emissions from associated digital devices, as defined in Section 15.3(k) of this chapter, *e.g.*, emissions from digital circuitry used to control additional functions or capabilities other than the operation of the transmitter, are subject to the limits contained in Subpart B of Part 15 of this chapter. Emissions from these digital circuits shall not be employed in determining the -10 dB bandwidth of the fundamental emission or the frequency at which the highest emission level occurs.

(c) Measurement procedures:

(1) All emissions at and below 960 MHz are based on measurements employing a CISPR quasi-peak detector. Unless otherwise specified, all RMS average emission levels specified in this section are to be measured utilizing a 1 MHz resolution bandwidth with a one millisecond dwell over each 1 MHz segment. The frequency span of the analyzer should equal the number of sampling bins times 1 MHz and the sweep rate of the analyzer should equal the number of sampling bins times one millisecond. The provision in Section 15.35(c) of this part that allows emissions to be averaged over a 100 millisecond period does not apply to devices operating under this section. The video bandwidth of the measurement instrument shall not be less than the resolution bandwidth and trace averaging shall not be employed. The RMS average emission measurement is to be repeated over multiple sweeps with the analyzer set for maximum hold until the amplitude stabilizes.

(2) The peak emission measurement is to be repeated over multiple sweeps with the analyzer set for maximum hold until the amplitude stabilizes.

(3) For transmitters that employ frequency hopping, stepped frequency or similar modulation types, the peak emission level measurement, the measurement of the RMS average emission levels, the measurement to determine the center frequency, and the measurement to determine the frequency at which the highest level emission occurs shall be made with the frequency hop or step function active. Gated signals may be measured with the gating active. The provisions of Section 15.31(c) of this part continue to apply to transmitters that employ swept frequency modulation.

(4) The -10 dB bandwidth is based on measurement using a peak detector, a 1 MHz resolution bandwidth, and a video bandwidth greater than or equal to the resolution bandwidth.

(5) Alternative measurement procedures may be considered by the Commission.

Section 15.253 Operation within the bands 46.7-46.9 GHz and 76.0-77.0 GHz.

(a) Operation within the bands 46.7-46.9 GHz and 76.0-77.0 GHz is restricted to vehicle-mounted field disturbance sensors used as vehicle radar systems. The transmission of additional information, such as data, is permitted provided the primary mode of operation is as a vehicle-mounted field disturbance sensor. Operation under the provisions of this section is not permitted on aircraft or satellites.

(b) The radiated emission limits within the bands 46.7-46.9 GHz and 76.0-77.0 GHz are as follows:

(1) If the vehicle is not in motion, the power density of any emission within the bands specified in this section shall not exceed  $200 \text{ nW/cm}^2$  at a distance of 3 meters from the exterior surface of the radiating structure. [Equivalent to an EIRP of 230 mW.]

(2) For forward-looking vehicle-mounted field disturbance sensors, if the vehicle is in motion the power density of any emission within the bands specified in this section shall not exceed  $60 \text{ } \mu\text{W/cm}^2$  at a distance of 3 meters from the exterior surface of the radiating structure. [Equivalent to an EIRP of 67.9 W.]

(3) For side-looking or rear-looking vehicle-mounted field disturbance sensors, if the vehicle is in motion the power density of any emission within the bands specified in this section shall not exceed  $30 \text{ } \mu\text{W/cm}^2$  at a distance of 3 meters from the exterior surface of the radiating structure. [Equivalent to an EIRP of 33.9 W.]

(c) The power density of any emissions outside the operating band shall consist solely of spurious emissions and shall not exceed the following:

(1) Radiated emissions below 40 GHz shall not exceed the general limits in Section 15.209 of this part.

(2) Radiated emissions outside the operating band and between 40 GHz and 200 GHz shall not exceed the following:

(i) For vehicle-mounted field disturbance sensors operating in the band 46.7-46.9 GHz:  $2 \text{ pW/cm}^2$  at a distance of 3 meters from the exterior surface of the radiating structure. [Equivalent to an EIRP of  $2.3 \text{ } \mu\text{W}$ .]

(ii) For forward-looking vehicle-mounted field disturbance sensors operating in the band 76-77 GHz:  $600 \text{ pW/cm}^2$  at a distance of 3 meters from the exterior surface of the radiating structure. [Equivalent to an EIRP of  $680 \text{ } \mu\text{W}$ .]

(iii) For side-looking or rear-looking vehicle-mounted field disturbance sensors operating in the band 76-77 GHz:  $300 \text{ pW/cm}^2$  at a distance of 3 meters from the exterior surface of the radiating structure. [Equivalent to an EIRP of  $340 \text{ } \mu\text{W}$ .]

(3) For radiated emissions above 200 GHz from field disturbance sensors operating in

the 76-77 GHz band: the power density of any emission shall not exceed 1000 pW/cm<sup>2</sup> at a distance of 3 meters from the exterior surface of the radiating structure. [Equivalent to an EIRP of 1.1 mW.]

(4) For field disturbance sensors operating in the 76-77 GHz band, the spectrum shall be investigated up to 231 GHz.

(d) The provisions in Section 15.35 of this part limiting peak emissions apply.

(e) Fundamental emissions must be contained within the frequency bands specified in this section during all conditions of operation. Equipment is presumed to operate over the temperature range -20 to +50 degrees Celsius with an input voltage variation of 85% to 115% of rated input voltage, unless justification is presented to demonstrate otherwise.

(f) Regardless of the power density levels permitted under this section, devices operating under the provisions of this section are subject to the radio frequency radiation exposure requirements specified in §§ 1.1307(b), 2.1091 and 2.1093 of this chapter, as appropriate. Applications for equipment authorization of devices operating under this section must contain a statement confirming compliance with these requirements for both fundamental emissions and unwanted emissions. Technical information showing the basis for this statement must be submitted to the Commission upon request.

#### Section 15.255 Operation within the band 57-64 GHz.

(a) Operation under the provisions of this section is not permitted for the following products:

(1) Equipment used on aircraft or satellites.

(2) Field disturbance sensors, including vehicle radar systems, unless the field disturbance sensors are employed for fixed operation. For the purposes of this section, the reference to fixed operation includes field disturbance sensors installed in fixed equipment, even if the sensor itself moves within the equipment.

(b) Within the 57-64 GHz band, emission levels shall not exceed the following:

(1) For products other than fixed field disturbance sensors, the average power density of any emission, measured during the transmit interval, shall not exceed 9 µW/cm<sup>2</sup>, as measured 3 meters from the radiating structure, and the peak power density of any emission shall not exceed 18 µW/cm<sup>2</sup>, as measured 3 meters from the radiating structure. [9 µW/cm<sup>2</sup> is equivalent to an EIRP of 10.2 W; 18 µW/cm<sup>2</sup> is equivalent to an EIRP of 20.4 W.]

(2) For fixed field disturbance sensors that occupy 500 MHz or less of bandwidth and that are contained wholly within the frequency band 61.0-61.5 GHz, the average power density of any emission, measured during the transmit interval, shall not exceed 9 µW/cm<sup>2</sup>, as measured 3 meters from the radiating structure, and the peak power density of any emission shall not exceed 18 µW/cm<sup>2</sup>, as measured 3 meters from the radiating structure. In addition, the average power density of any emission outside of the 61.0-61.5 GHz band, measured during the transmit interval, but still within the 57-64 GHz band, shall not exceed 9 nW/cm<sup>2</sup>, as measured 3 meters from the radiating structure, and the peak power

density of any emission shall not exceed  $18 \text{ nW/cm}^2$ , as measured three meters from the radiating structure. [ $9 \text{ nW/cm}^2$  is equivalent to an EIRP of  $10.2 \text{ mW}$ ;  $18 \text{ nW/cm}^2$  is equivalent to an EIRP of  $20.4 \text{ mW}$ .]

(3) For fixed field disturbance sensors other than those operating under the provisions of paragraph (b)(2) of this section, the peak transmitter output power shall not exceed  $0.1 \text{ mW}$  and the peak power density shall not exceed  $9 \text{ nW/cm}^2$  at a distance of 3 meters.

(4) Peak power density shall be measured with an RF detector that has a detection bandwidth that encompasses the 57-64 GHz band and has a video bandwidth of at least 10 MHz, or using an equivalent measurement method.

(5) The average emission levels shall be calculated, based on the measured peak levels, over the actual time period during which transmission occurs.

(c) Limits on spurious emissions:

(1) The power density of any emissions outside the 57-64 GHz band shall consist solely of spurious emissions.

(2) Radiated emissions below 40 GHz shall not exceed the general limits in Section 15.209 of this part.

(3) Between 40 GHz and 200 GHz, the level of these emissions shall not exceed  $90 \text{ pW/cm}^2$  at a distance of 3 meters. [Equivalent to an EIRP of  $102 \text{ } \mu\text{W}$ .]

(4) The levels of the spurious emissions shall not exceed the level of the fundamental emission.

(d) Only spurious emissions and transmissions related to a publicly-accessible coordination channel, whose purpose is to coordinate operation between diverse transmitters with a view towards reducing the probability of interference throughout the 57-64 GHz band, are permitted in the 57-57.05 GHz band.

NOTE: The 57-57.05 GHz is reserved exclusively for a publicly-accessible coordination channel. The development of standards for this channel shall be performed pursuant to authorizations issued under Part 5 of this chapter.

(e) Except as specified below, the total peak transmitter output power shall not exceed  $500 \text{ mW}$ .

(1) Transmitters with an emission bandwidth of less than 100 MHz must limit their peak transmitter output power to the product of  $500 \text{ mW}$  times their emission bandwidth divided by 100 MHz. For the purposes of this paragraph, emission bandwidth is defined as the instantaneous frequency range occupied by a steady state radiated signal with modulation, outside which the radiated power spectral density never exceeds 6 dB below the maximum radiated power spectral density in the band, as measured with a 100 kHz resolution bandwidth spectrum analyzer. The center frequency must be stationary during the measurement interval, even if not stationary during normal operation (e.g. for frequency hopping

devices).

(2) Peak transmitter output power shall be measured with an RF detector that has a detection bandwidth that encompasses the 57-64 GHz band and that has a video bandwidth of at least 10 MHz, or using an equivalent measurement method.

(3) For purposes of demonstrating compliance with this paragraph, corrections to the transmitter output power may be made due to the antenna and circuit loss.

(f) Fundamental emissions must be contained within the frequency bands specified in this section during all conditions of operation. Equipment is presumed to operate over the temperature range -20 to +50 degrees Celsius with an input voltage variation of 85% to 115% of rated input voltage, unless justification is presented to demonstrate otherwise.

(g) Regardless of the power density levels permitted under this section, devices operating under the provisions of this section are subject to the radio frequency radiation exposure requirements specified in §§ 1.1307(b), 2.1091 and 2.1093 of this chapter, as appropriate. Applications for equipment authorization of devices operating under this section must contain a statement confirming compliance with these requirements for both fundamental emissions and unwanted emissions. Technical information showing the basis for this statement must be submitted to the Commission upon request.

(h) Any transmitter that has received the necessary FCC equipment authorization under the rules of this chapter may be mounted in a group installation for simultaneous operation with one or more other transmitter(s) that have received the necessary FCC equipment authorization, without any additional equipment authorization. However, no transmitter operating under the provisions of this section may be equipped with external phase-locking inputs that permit beam-forming arrays to be realized.

(i) For all transmissions that emanate from inside a building, within any one second interval of signal transmission, each transmitter with a peak output power equal to or greater than 0.1 mW or a peak power density equal to or greater than 3 nW/cm<sup>2</sup>, as measured 3 meters from the radiating structure, must transmit a transmitter identification at least once. Each application for equipment authorization must declare that the equipment that will be used inside a building contains the required transmitter identification feature and must specify a method whereby interested parties can obtain sufficient information, at no cost, to enable them to fully detect and decode this transmitter identification information. Upon the completion of decoding, the transmitter identification data block must provide the following fields:

1. FCC Identifier, which shall be programmed at the factory.
2. Manufacturer's serial number, which shall be programmed at the factory.
3. Provision for at least 24 bytes of data relevant to the specific device, which shall be field programmable. The grantee must implement a method that makes it possible for users to specify and update this data. The recommended content of this field is information to assist in contacting the operator.

Section 15.257 Operation within the band 92-95 GHz.

(a) Operation of devices under the provisions of this section is limited to indoor use;

(1) Devices operating under the provisions of this section, by the nature of their design, must be capable of operation only indoors. The necessity to operate with a fixed indoor infrastructure, e.g., a transmitter that must be connected to the AC power lines, may be considered sufficient to demonstrate this.

(2) The use of outdoor mounted antennas, e.g., antennas mounted on the outside of a building or on a telephone pole, or any other outdoors infrastructure is prohibited.

(3) The emissions from equipment operated under this section shall not be intentionally directed outside of the building in which the equipment is located, such as through a window or a doorway.

(4) Devices operating under the provisions of this section shall bear the following or similar statement in a conspicuous location on the device or in the instruction manual supplied with the device:

“This equipment may only be operated indoors. Operation outdoors is in violation of 47 U.S.C. 301 and could subject the operator to serious legal penalties.”

(b) Operation under the provisions of this section is not permitted on aircraft or satellites.

(c) Within the 92-95 GHz bands, the emission levels shall not exceed the following:

(1) The average power density of any emission, measured during the transmit interval, shall not exceed  $9 \mu\text{W}/\text{sq. cm}$ , as measured at 3 meters from the radiating structure, and the peak power density of any emission shall not exceed  $18 \mu\text{W}/\text{sq. cm}$ , as measured 3 meters from the radiating structure. [ $9 \mu\text{W}/\text{cm}^2$  is equivalent to an EIRP of 10.2 W;  $18 \mu\text{W}/\text{cm}^2$  is equivalent to an EIRP of 20.4 W.]

(2) Peak power density shall be measured with an RF detector that has a detection bandwidth that encompasses the band being used and has a video bandwidth of at least 10 MHz, or uses an equivalent measurement method.

(3) The average emission limits shall be calculated based on the measured peak levels, over the actual time period during which transmission occurs.

(d) Limits on spurious emissions:

(1) The power density of any emissions outside the band being used shall consist solely of spurious emissions.

(2) Radiated emissions below 40 GHz shall not exceed the general limits in § 15.209.

(3) Between 40 GHz and 200 GHz, the level of these emissions shall not exceed 90 pW/cm<sup>2</sup> at a distance of 3 meters. [Equivalent to an EIRP of 102 μW.]

(4) The levels of the spurious emissions shall not exceed the level of the fundamental emission.

(e) The total peak transmitter output power shall not exceed 500 mW.

(f) Fundamental emissions must be contained within the frequency bands specified in this section during all conditions of operation. Equipment is presumed to operate over the temperature range - 20 to +50 degrees Celsius with an input voltage variation of 85% to 115% of rated input voltage, unless justification is presented to demonstrate otherwise.

(g) Regardless of the maximum EIRP and maximum power density levels permitted under this section, devices operating under the provisions of this section are subject to the radiofrequency radiation exposure requirements specified in 47 C.F.R. §§ 1.1307(b), 2.1091, and 2.1093, as appropriate. Applications for equipment authorization of devices operating under this section must contain a statement confirming compliance with these requirements for both fundamental emissions and unwanted emissions. Technical information showing the basis for this statement must be submitted to the Commission upon request.

(h) Any transmitter that has received the necessary FCC equipment authorization under the rules of this chapter may be mounted in a group installation for simultaneous operation with one or more other transmitter(s) that have received the necessary FCC equipment authorization, without any additional equipment authorization. However, no transmitter operating under the provisions of this section may be equipped with external phase-locking inputs that permit beam-forming arrays to be realized.

## Subpart D - Unlicensed Personal Communications Service Devices

### Section 15.301 Scope.

This subpart sets out the regulations for unlicensed personal communications services (PCS) devices operating in the 1920-1930 MHz band.

### Section 15.303 Definitions.

(a) Asynchronous devices. Devices that transmit RF energy at irregular time intervals, as typified by local area network data systems.

(b) Coordinatable PCS device. PCS devices whose geographical area of operation is sufficiently controlled either by necessity of operation with a fixed infrastructure or by disabling mechanisms to allow adequate coordination of their locations relative to incumbent fixed microwave facilities.

(c) Emission bandwidth. For purposes of this subpart the emission bandwidth shall be determined by measuring the width of the signal between two points, one below the carrier center frequency and one above the carrier center frequency, that are 26 dB down relative to the maximum level of the modulated carrier. Compliance with the emissions limits is based on the use of measurement instrumentation employing a peak detector function with an instrument resolutions bandwidth approximately equal to 1.0 percent of the emission bandwidth of the device under measurement.

(d) Isochronous devices. Devices that transmit at a regular interval, typified by time-division voice systems.

(e) Noncoordinatable PCS device. A PCS device that is capable of randomly roaming and operating in geographic areas containing incumbent microwave facilities such that operation of the PCS device will potentially cause harmful interference to the incumbent microwave facilities.

(f) Peak transmit power. The peak power output as measured over an interval of time equal to the frame rate or transmission burst of the device under all conditions of modulation. Usually this parameter is measured as a conducted emission by direct connection of a calibrated test instrument to the equipment under test. If the device cannot be connected directly, alternative techniques acceptable to the Commission may be used.

(g) Personal Communications Service (PCS) Devices [Unlicensed]. Intentional radiators operating in the frequency band 1920-1930 MHz that provide a wide array of mobile and ancillary fixed communication services to individuals and businesses.

(h) Spectrum window. An amount of spectrum equal to the intended emission bandwidth in which operation is desired.

(i) Sub-band. For purposes of this subpart the term sub-band refers to the spectrum allocated for isochronous or asynchronous transmission.

(j) Thermal noise power. The noise power in watts defined by the formula  $N=kTB$  where N is the noise power in watts, k is Boltzmann's constant, T is the absolute temperature in degrees Kelvin (e.g., 295° K) and B is the emission bandwidth of the device in hertz.

(k) Time window. An interval of time in which transmission is desired.

#### Section 15.305 Equipment authorization requirement.

PCS devices operating under this subpart shall be certificated by the Commission under the procedures in Subpart J of Part 2 of this Chapter before marketing. The application for certification must contain sufficient information to demonstrate compliance with the requirements of this subpart.

#### Section 15.307 Coordination with fixed microwave service.

(a) UTAM, Inc., is designated to coordinate and manage the transition of the 1910-1930 MHz band from Private Operational-Fixed Microwave Service (OFS) operating under Part 94 of this Chapter to unlicensed PCS operations, conditioned upon submittal to and acceptance by the Commission of:

(1) A funding plan that is equitable to all prospective manufacturers of unlicensed PCS devices; and

(2) A plan for "band clearing" that will permit the implementation of noncoordinatable (nomadic) devices and, in particular, noncoordinatable data PCS devices, as promptly as possible. The responsibilities of UTAM, Inc. include, but are not limited to, relocation of existing OFS microwave stations pursuant to requirements established in ET Docket No. 92-9, negotiating costs of relocation, ensuring that comparable facilities are provided, and resolving any disputes of interference to OFS microwave operations from unlicensed PCS operations. These responsibilities shall terminate upon a determination by the Commission that interference to OFS microwave operations from unlicensed PCS operations is no longer a concern.

(b) Each application for certification of equipment operating under the provisions of this Subpart must be accompanied by an affidavit from UTAM, Inc. certifying that the applicant is a participating member of UTAM, Inc. In the event a grantee fails to fulfill the obligations attendant to participation in UTAM, Inc., the Commission may invoke administrative sanctions as necessary to preclude continued marketing and installation of devices covered by the grant of certification, including but not limited to revoking certification.

(c) An application for certification of a PCS device that is deemed by UTAM, Inc. to be noncoordinatable will not be accepted until the Commission announces that a need for coordination no longer exists. [This was announced by Public Notice, DA 05-1005, April 4, 2005.]

(d) A coordinatable PCS device is required to incorporate means that ensure that it cannot be activated until its location has been coordinated by UTAM, Inc. The application for certification shall contain an explanation of all measures taken to prevent unauthorized operation. This explanation shall include all procedural safeguards, such as the mandatory use of licensed technicians to install the equipment, and a complete description of all technical features controlling activation of the device. [This

provision was eliminated by Public Notice, DA 05-1005, April 4, 2005.]

(e) A coordinatable PCS device shall incorporate an automatic mechanism for disabling operation in the event it is moved outside the geographic area where its operation has been coordinated by UTAM, Inc. The application for certification shall contain a full description of the safeguards against unauthorized relocation and must satisfy the Commission that the safeguards cannot be easily defeated. [This provision was eliminated by Public Notice, DA 05-1005, April 4, 2005.]

(f) At such time as the Commission deems that the need for coordination between unlicensed PCS operations and existing Part 94 Private Operational-Fixed Microwave Services ceases to exist, the disabling mechanism required by paragraph (e) will no longer be required. [The need for coordination and the associated disabling mechanism were eliminated by Public Notice, DA 05-1005, April 4, 2005.]

(g) Operations under the provisions of this subpart are required to protect systems in the Private Operational-Fixed Microwave Service operating within the 1850-1990 MHz band until the dates and conditions specified in Section 94.59 of this Chapter for termination of primary status. Interference protection is not required for Part 94 stations in this band licensed on a secondary basis. [This provision was eliminated by Public Notice, DA 05-1005, April 4, 2005.]

(h) The operator of a PCS device that is relocated from the coordinated area specified by UTAM, Inc., must cease operating the device until coordination for the new location is verified by UTAM, Inc. [This provision was eliminated by Public Notice, DA 05-1005, April 4, 2005.]

#### Section 15.309 Cross reference.

(a) The provisions of Subpart A of this Part apply to unlicensed PCS devices, except where specific provisions are contained in Subpart D.

(b) The requirements of Subpart D apply only to the radio transmitter contained in the PCS device. Other aspects of the operation of a PCS device may be subject to requirements contained elsewhere in this Chapter. In particular, a PCS device that includes digital circuitry not directly associated with the radio transmitter also is subject to the requirements for unintentional radiators in Subpart B.

#### Section 15.311 Labelling requirements.

In addition to the labelling requirements of Section 15.19(a)(3), all devices operating in the frequency band 1920-1930 MHz authorized under this subpart must bear a prominently located label with the following statement:

Installation of this equipment is subject to notification and coordination with UTAM, Inc. Any relocation of this equipment must be coordinated through, and approved by UTAM. UTAM may be contacted at [insert UTAM's toll-free number].

[Note: UTAM's number is 1-800-429-8826. This labelling requirement was eliminated by Public Notice, DA 05-1005, April 4, 2005.]

Section 15.313 Measurement procedures.

Measurements must be made in accordance with Subpart A, except where specific procedures are specified in Subpart D. If no guidance is provided, the measurement procedure must be in accordance with good engineering practice.

Section 15.315 Conducted limits.

An unlicensed PCS device that is designed to be connected to the public utility (AC) power line must meet the limits specified in Section 15.207.

Section 15.317 Antenna requirement.

An unlicensed PCS device must meet the antenna requirement of Section 15.203.

Section 15.319 General technical requirements.

- (a) [Reserved]
- (b) All transmissions must use only digital modulation techniques.
- (c) Peak transmit power shall not exceed 100 microwatts multiplied by the square root of the emission bandwidth in hertz. Peak transmit power must be measured over any interval of continuous transmission using instrumentation calibrated in terms of an rms-equivalent voltage. The measurement results shall be properly adjusted for any instrument limitations, such as detector response times, limited resolution bandwidth capability when compared to the emission bandwidth, sensitivity, etc., so as to obtain a true peak measurement for the emission in question over the full bandwidth of the channel.
- (d) Power spectral density shall not exceed 3 milliwatts in any 3 kHz bandwidth as measured with a spectrum analyzer having a resolution bandwidth of 3 kHz.
- (e) The peak transmit power shall be reduced by the amount in decibels that the maximum directional gain of the antenna exceeds 3 dBi.
- (f) The device shall automatically discontinue transmission in case of either absence of information to transmit or operational failure. These provisions are not intended to preclude transmission of control and signaling information or use of repetitive codes used by certain digital technologies to complete frame or burst intervals.
- (g) Notwithstanding other technical requirements specified in this subpart, attenuation of emissions below the general emission limits in Section 15.209 is not required.
- (h) Where there is a transition between limits, the tighter limit shall apply at the transition point.
- (i) Unlicensed PCS devices are subject to the radio frequency radiation exposure requirements

specified in §§ 1.1307(b), 2.1091 and 2.1093 of this chapter, as appropriate. All equipment shall be considered to operate in a "general population/uncontrolled" environment. Applications for equipment authorization of devices operating under this section must contain a statement confirming compliance with these requirements for both fundamental emissions and unwanted emissions. Technical information showing the basis for this statement must be submitted to the Commission upon request.

Section 15.321 [Reserved]

Section 15.323 Specific requirements for devices operating in the 1920-1930 MHz sub-band.

(a) Operation shall be contained within the 1920-1930 MHz band. The emission bandwidth shall be less than 2.5 MHz. The power level shall be as specified in § 15.319(c), but in no event shall the emission bandwidth be less than 50 kHz.

(b) [removed and reserved]

(c) Devices must incorporate a mechanism for monitoring the time and spectrum windows that its transmission is intended to occupy. The following criteria must be met:

(1) Immediately prior to initiating transmission, devices must monitor the combined time and spectrum windows in which they intend to transmit for a period of at least 10 milliseconds for systems designed to use a 10 millisecond or shorter frame period or at least 20 milliseconds for systems designed to use a 20 millisecond frame period.

(2) The monitoring threshold must not be more than 30 dB above the thermal noise power for a bandwidth equivalent to the emission bandwidth of the device.

(3) If no signal above the threshold level is detected, transmission may commence and continue with the same emission bandwidth in the monitored time and spectrum windows without further monitoring. However, occupation of the same combined time and spectrum windows by a device or group of cooperating devices continuously over a period of time longer than 8 hours is not permitted without repeating the access criteria.

(4) Once access to specific combined time and spectrum windows is obtained an acknowledgement from a system participant must be received by the initiating transmitter within one second or transmission must cease. Periodic acknowledgements must be received at least every 30 seconds or transmission must cease. Channels used exclusively for control and signaling information may transmit continuously for 30 seconds without receiving an acknowledgement, at which time the access criteria must be repeated.

(5) If access to spectrum is not available as determined by the above, and a minimum of 40 duplex system access channels are defined for the system, the time and spectrum windows with the lowest power level below a monitoring threshold of 50 dB above the thermal noise power determined for the emission bandwidth may be accessed. A device utilizing the provisions of this paragraph must have monitored all access channels defined for its system within the last 10 seconds and must verify, within the 20 milliseconds (40 milliseconds for devices designed to use a 20 milliseconds frame period) immediately

preceding actual channel access that the detected power of the selected time and spectrum windows is no higher than the previously detected value. The power measurement resolution for this comparison must be accurate to within 6 dB. No device or group of co-operating devices located within 1 meter of each other shall during any frame period occupy more than 6 MHz of aggregate bandwidth, or alternatively, more than one third of the time and spectrum windows defined by the system.

(6) If the selected combined time and spectrum windows are unavailable, the device may either monitor and select different windows or seek to use the same windows after waiting an amount of time, randomly chosen from a uniform random distribution between 10 and 150 milliseconds, commencing when the channel becomes available.

(7) The monitoring system bandwidth must be equal to or greater than the emission bandwidth of the intended transmission and have a maximum reaction time less than  $50 \times \text{SQRT}(1.25/\text{emission bandwidth in MHz})$  microseconds for signals at the applicable threshold level but shall not be required to be less than 50 microseconds. If a signal is detected that is 6 dB or more above the applicable threshold level, the maximum reaction time shall be  $35 \times \text{SQRT}(1.25/\text{emission bandwidth in MHz})$  microseconds but shall not be required to be less than 35 microseconds.

(8) The monitoring system shall use the same antenna used for transmission, or an antenna that yields equivalent reception at that location.

(9) Devices that have a power output lower than the maximum permitted under the rules may increase their monitoring detection threshold by one decibel for each one decibel that the transmitter power is below the maximum permitted.

(10) An initiating device may attempt to establish a duplex connection by monitoring both its intended transmit and receive time and spectrum windows. If both the intended transmit and receive time and spectrum windows meet the access criteria, then the initiating device can initiate a transmission in the intended transmit time and spectrum window. If the power detected by the responding device can be decoded as a duplex connection signal from the initiating device, then the responding device may immediately begin transmitting on the receive time and spectrum window monitored by the initiating device.

(11) An initiating device that is prevented from monitoring during its intended transmit window due to monitoring system blocking from the transmissions of a co-located (within one meter) transmitter of the same system, may monitor the portions of the time and spectrum windows in which they intend to receive over a period of at least 10 milliseconds. The monitored time and spectrum window must total at least 50 percent of the 10 millisecond frame interval and the monitored spectrum must be within 1.25 MHz of the center frequency of channel(s) already occupied by that device or co-located co-operating devices. If the access criteria is met for the intended receive time and spectrum window under the above conditions, then transmission in the intended transmit window by the initiating device may commence.

(12) The provisions of (c)(10) or (c)(11) shall not be used to extend the range of spectrum occupied over space or time for the purpose of denying fair access to spectrum to other devices.

(d) Emissions outside the sub-band shall be attenuated below a reference power of 112 milliwatts as follows: 30 dB between the sub-band and 1.25 MHz above or below the sub-band; 50 dB between 1.25 and 2.5 MHz above or below the sub-band; and 60 dB at 2.5 MHz or greater above or below the sub-band. Emissions inside the sub-band must comply with the following emission mask: In the bands between 1B and 2B measured from the center of the emission bandwidth the total power emitted by the device shall be at least 30 dB below the transmit power permitted for that device; in the bands between 2B and 3B measured from the center of the emission bandwidth the total power emitted by an intentional radiator shall be at least 50 dB below the transmit power permitted for that radiator; in the bands between 3B and the sub-band edge the total power emitted by an intentional radiator in the measurement bandwidth shall be at least 60 dB below the transmit power permitted for that radiator. "B" is defined as the emission bandwidth of the device in hertz. Compliance with the emission limits is based on the use of measurement instrumentation employing peak detector function with an instrument resolution bandwidth approximately equal to 1.0 percent of the emission bandwidth of the device under measurement.

(e) The frame period (a set of consecutive time slots in which the position of each time slot can be identified by reference to a synchronizing source) of an intentional radiator operating in these sub-bands shall be 20 milliseconds/X where X is a positive whole number. Each device that implements time division for the purposes of maintaining a duplex connection on a given frequency carrier shall maintain a frame repetition rate with a frequency stability of at least 50 parts per millions (ppm). Each device which further divides access in time in order to support multiple communication links on a given frequency carrier shall maintain a frame repetition rate with a frequency stability of at least 10 ppm. The jitter (time-related, abrupt, spurious variations in the duration of the frame interval) introduced at the two ends of such a communication link shall not exceed 25 microseconds for any two consecutive transmissions. Transmissions shall be continuous in every time and spectrum window during the frame period defined for the device.

(f) The frequency stability of the carrier frequency of the intentional radiator shall be maintained within  $\pm 10$  ppm over 1 hour or the interval between channel access monitoring, whichever is shorter. The frequency stability shall be maintained over a temperature variation of  $-20^{\circ}$  to  $+50^{\circ}$  degrees C at normal supply voltage, and over a variation in the primary supply voltage of 85 percent to 115 percent of the rated supply voltage at a temperature of  $20^{\circ}$  C. For equipment that is capable only of operating from a battery, the frequency stability tests shall be performed using a new battery without any further requirement to vary supply voltage.

## Subpart E - Unlicensed National Information Infrastructure Devices

### Section 15.401 Scope.

This subpart sets out the regulations for unlicensed National Information Infrastructure (U-NII) devices operating in the 5.15 - 5.35 GHz, 5.47 - 5.725 GHz and 5.725 - 5.825 GHz bands.

### Section 15.403 Definitions.

(a) Access Point (AP). A U-NII transceiver that operates either as a bridge in a peer-to-peer connection or as a connector between the wired and wireless segments of the network.

(b) Available Channel. A radio channel on which a *Channel Availability Check* has not identified the presence of a radar.

(c) Average Symbol Envelope Power. The average symbol envelope power is the average, taken over all symbols in the signaling alphabet, of the envelope power for each symbol.

(d) Channel Availability Check. A check during which the U-NII device listens on a particular radio channel to identify whether there is a radar operating on that radio channel.

(e) Channel Move Time. The time needed by a U-NII device to cease all transmissions on the current channel upon detection of a radar signal above the DFS detection threshold.

(f) Digital modulation. The process by which the characteristics of a carrier wave are varied among a set of predetermined discrete values in accordance with a digital modulating function as specified in document ANSI C63.17-1998.

(g) Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) is a mechanism that dynamically detects signals from other systems and avoids co-channel operation with these systems, notably radar systems.

(h) DFS Detection Threshold. The required detection level defined by detecting a received signal strength (RSS) that is greater than a threshold specified, within the U-NII device channel bandwidth.

(i) Emission bandwidth. For purposes of this subpart the emission bandwidth shall be determined by measuring the width of the signal between two points, one below the carrier center frequency and one above the carrier center frequency, that are 26 dB down relative to the maximum level of the modulated carrier. Determination of the emissions bandwidth is based on the use of measurement instrumentation employing a peak detector function with an instrument resolution bandwidth approximately equal to 1.0 percent of the emission bandwidth of the device under measurement.

(j) In-Service Monitoring. A mechanism to check a channel in use by the U-NII device for the presence of a radar.

(k) Non-Occupancy Period. The required period in which, once a channel has been recognized

as containing a radar signal by a U-NII device, the channel will not be selected as an available channel.

(l) Operating Channel. Once a U-NII device starts to operate on an *Available Channel* then that channel becomes the *Operating Channel*.

(m) Peak Power Spectral Density. The peak power spectral density is the maximum power spectral density, within the specified measurement bandwidth, within the U-NII device operating band.

(n) Maximum Conducted Output Power. The total transmit power delivered to all antennas and antenna elements averaged across all symbols in the signaling alphabet when the transmitter is operating at its maximum power control level. Power must be summed across all antennas and antenna elements. The average must not include any time intervals during which the transmitter is off or is transmitting at a reduced power level. If multiple modes of operation are possible (e.g., alternative modulation methods), the *maximum conducted output power* is the highest total transmit power occurring in any mode.

(o) Power Spectral Density. The power spectral density is the total energy output per unit bandwidth from a pulse or sequence of pulses for which the transmit power is at its peak or maximum level, divided by the total duration of the pulses. This total time does not include the time between pulses during which the transmit power is off or below its maximum level.

(p) Pulse. A pulse is a continuous transmission of a sequence of modulation symbols, during which the average symbol envelope power is constant.

(q) RLAN. Radio Local Area Network.

(r) Transmit Power Control (TPC). A feature that enables a U-NII device to dynamically switch between several transmission power levels in the data transmission process.

(s) U-NII devices. Intentional radiators operating in the frequency bands 5.15 - 5.35 GHz and 5.470 - 5.825 GHz that use wideband digital modulation techniques and provide a wide array of high data rate mobile and fixed communications for individuals, businesses, and institutions. [It has been interpreted that the reference to a high data rate generally applies to data rates of at least 1 Mb/s.]

#### Section 15.405 Cross reference.

(a) The provisions of Subparts A, B, and C of this part apply to unlicensed U-NII devices, except where specific provisions are contained in subpart E. Manufacturers should note that this includes the provisions of Sections 15.203 and 15.205.

(b) The requirements of subpart E apply only to the radio transmitter contained in the U-NII device. Other aspects of the operation of a U-NII device may be subject to requirements contained elsewhere in this chapter. In particular, a U-NII device that includes digital circuitry not directly associated with the radio transmitter also is subject to the requirements for unintentional radiators in subpart B.

Section 15.407 General technical requirements.

(a) Power limits:

(1) For the band 5.15-5.25 GHz, the maximum conducted output power over the frequency band of operation shall not exceed the lesser of 50 mW or  $4 \text{ dBm} + 10\log B$ , where B is the 26-dB emission bandwidth in MHz. In addition, the peak power spectral density shall not exceed 4 dBm in any 1-MHz band. If transmitting antennas of directional gain greater than 6 dBi are used, both the maximum conducted output power and the peak power spectral density shall be reduced by the amount in dB that the directional gain of the antenna exceeds 6 dBi.

(2) For the 5.25-5.35 GHz and 5.47-5.725 GHz bands, the maximum conducted output power over the frequency bands of operation shall not exceed the lesser of 250 mW or  $11 \text{ dBm} + 10\log B$ , where B is the 26 dB emission bandwidth in megahertz. In addition, the peak power spectral density shall not exceed 11 dBm in any 1 megahertz band. If transmitting antennas of directional gain greater than 6 dBi are used, both the maximum conducted output power and the peak power spectral density shall be reduced by the amount in dB that the directional gain of the antenna exceeds 6 dBi.

(3) For the band 5.725-5.825 GHz, the maximum conducted output power over the frequency band of operation shall not exceed the lesser of 1 W or  $17 \text{ dBm} + 10\log B$ , where B is the 26-dB emission bandwidth in MHz. In addition, the peak power spectral density shall not exceed 17 dBm in any 1-MHz band. If transmitting antennas of directional gain greater than 6 dBi are used, both the maximum conducted output power and the peak power spectral density shall be reduced by the amount in dB that the directional gain of the antenna exceeds 6 dBi. However, fixed point-to-point U-NII devices operating in this band may employ transmitting antennas with directional gain up to 23 dBi without any corresponding reduction in the transmitter peak output power or peak power spectral density. For fixed, point-to-point U-NII transmitters that employ a directional antenna gain greater than 23 dBi, a 1 dB reduction in peak transmitter power and peak power spectral density for each 1 dB of antenna gain in excess of 23 dBi would be required. Fixed, point-to-point operations exclude the use of point-to-multipoint systems, omnidirectional applications, and multiple collocated transmitters transmitting the same information. The operator of the U-NII device, or if the equipment is professionally installed, the installer, is responsible for ensuring that systems employing high gain directional antennas are used exclusively for fixed, point-to-point operations.

NOTE: The Commission strongly recommends that parties employing U-NII devices to provide critical communications services should determine if there are any nearby Government radar systems that could affect their operation.

(4) The maximum conducted output power must be measured over any interval of continuous transmission using instrumentation calibrated in terms of an rms-equivalent voltage. The measurement results shall be properly adjusted for any instrument limitations, such as detector response times, limited resolution bandwidth capability when compared to the emission bandwidth, sensitivity, etc., so as to obtain a true peak measurement conforming to the above definitions for the emission in question.

(5) The peak power spectral density is measured as a conducted emission by direct

connection of a calibrated test instrument to the equipment under test. If the device cannot be connected directly, alternative techniques acceptable to the Commission may be used. Measurements are made over a bandwidth of 1 MHz or the 26 dB emission bandwidth of the device, whichever is less. A resolution bandwidth less than the measurement bandwidth can be used, provided that the measured power is integrated to show total power over the measurement bandwidth. If the resolution bandwidth is approximately equal to the measurement bandwidth, and much less than the emission bandwidth of the equipment under test, the measured results shall be corrected to account for any difference between the resolution bandwidth of the test instrument and its actual noise bandwidth.

(6) The ratio of the peak excursion of the modulation envelope (measured using a peak hold function) to the maximum conducted output power (measured as specified above) shall not exceed 13 dB across any 1 MHz bandwidth or the emission bandwidth whichever is less.

(b) Undesirable Emission Limits: Except as shown in Paragraph (b)(6) of this section, the peak emissions outside of the frequency bands of operation shall be attenuated in accordance with the following limits:

(1) For transmitters operating in the 5.15-5.25 GHz band: all emissions outside of the 5.15-5.35 GHz band shall not exceed an EIRP of -27 dBm/MHz.

(2) For transmitters operating in the 5.25-5.35 GHz band: all emissions outside of the 5.15-5.35 GHz band shall not exceed an EIRP of -27 dBm/MHz. Devices operating in the 5.25-5.35 GHz band that generate emissions in the 5.15-5.25 GHz band must meet all applicable technical requirements for operation in the 5.15-5.25 GHz band (including indoor use) or alternatively meet an out-of-band emission EIRP limit of -27 dBm/MHz in the 5.15-5.25 GHz band.

(3) For transmitters operating in the 5.47-5.725 GHz band: all emissions outside of the 5.47-5.725 GHz band shall not exceed an EIRP of -27 dBm/MHz.

(4) For transmitters operating in the 5.725-5.825 GHz band: all emissions within the frequency range from the band edge to 10 MHz above or below the band edge shall not exceed an EIRP of -17 dBm/MHz; for frequencies 10 MHz or greater above or below the band edge, emissions shall not exceed an EIRP of -27 dBm/MHz.

(5) The above emission measurements shall be performed using a minimum resolution bandwidth of 1 MHz. A lower resolution bandwidth may be employed near the band edge, when necessary, provided the measured energy is integrated to show the total power over 1 MHz.

(6) Unwanted emissions below 1 GHz must comply with the general field strength limits set forth in Section 15.209. Further, any U-NII devices using an AC power line are required to comply also with the conducted limits set forth in Section 15.207.

(7) The provisions of Section 15.205 of this part apply to intentional radiators operating under this section.

(8) When measuring the emission limits, the nominal carrier frequency shall be adjusted

as close to the upper and lower frequency block edges as the design of the equipment permits.

(c) The device shall automatically discontinue transmission in case of either absence of information to transmit or operational failure. These provisions are not intended to preclude the transmission of control or signaling information or the use of repetitive codes used by certain digital technologies to complete frame or burst intervals. Applicants shall include in their application for equipment authorization a description of how this requirement is met.

(d) [Reserved]

(e) Within the 5.15-5.25 GHz band, U-NII devices will be restricted to indoor operations to reduce any potential for harmful interference to co-channel MSS operations.

(f) U-NII devices are subject to the radio frequency radiation exposure requirements specified in §§ 1.1307(b), 2.1091 and 2.1093 of this chapter, as appropriate. All equipment shall be considered to operate in a "general population/uncontrolled" environment. Applications for equipment authorization of devices operating under this section must contain a statement confirming compliance with these requirements for both fundamental emissions and unwanted emissions. Technical information showing the basis for this statement must be submitted to the Commission upon request.

(g) Manufacturers of U-NII devices are responsible for ensuring frequency stability such that an emission is maintained within the band of operation under all conditions of normal operation as specified in the user's manual.

(h) Transmit Power Control (TPC) and Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS).

(1) Transmit power control (TPC). U-NII devices operating in the 5.25-5.35 GHz band and the 5.47-5.725 GHz band shall employ a TPC mechanism. The U-NII device is required to have the capability to operate at least 6 dB below the mean EIRP value of 30 dBm. A TPC mechanism is not required for systems with an e.i.r.p. of less than 500 mW.

(2) Radar Detection Function of Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS). U-NII devices operating in the 5.25-5.35 GHz and 5.47-5.725 GHz bands shall employ a DFS radar detection mechanism to detect the presence of radar systems and to avoid co-channel operation with radar systems. The minimum DFS detection threshold for devices with a maximum e.i.r.p. of 200 mW to 1 W is -64 dBm. For devices that operate with less than 200 mW e.i.r.p. the minimum detection threshold is -62 dBm. The detection threshold is the received power averaged over 1 microsecond referenced to a 0 dBi antenna. The DFS process shall be required to provide a uniform spreading of the loading over all the available channels.

(i) Operational Modes. The DFS requirement applies to the following operational modes:

(A) The requirement for channel availability check time applies in the master operational mode.

(B) The requirement for channel move time applies in both the master and slave operational modes.

(ii) Channel Availability Check Time. A U-NII device shall check if there is a radar system already operating on the channel before it can initiate a transmission on a channel and when it has to move to a new channel. The U-NII device may start using the channel if no radar signal with a power level greater than the interference threshold values listed above is detected within 60 seconds.

(iii) Channel Move Time. After a radar's presence is detected, all transmissions shall cease on the operating channel within 10 seconds. Transmissions during this period shall consist of normal traffic for a maximum of 200 ms after detection of the radar signal. In addition, intermittent management and control signals can be sent during the remaining time to facilitate vacating the operating channel.

(iv) Non-occupancy Period. A channel that has been flagged as containing a radar system, either by a channel availability check or in-service monitoring, is subject to a non-occupancy period of at least 30 minutes. The non-occupancy period starts at the time when the radar system is detected.

## Subpart F – Ultra-Wideband Operation

### Section 15.501 Scope.

This subpart sets out the regulations for unlicensed ultra-wideband transmission systems.

### Section 15.503 Definitions.

(a) UWB Bandwidth. For the purpose of this subpart, the UWB bandwidth is the frequency band bounded by the points that are 10 dB below the highest radiated emission, as based on the complete transmission system including the antenna. The upper boundary is designated  $f_H$  and the lower boundary is designated  $f_L$ . The frequency at which the highest radiated emission occurs is designated  $f_M$ .

(b) Center frequency. The center frequency,  $f_C$ , equals  $(f_H + f_L)/2$ .

(c) Fractional bandwidth. The fractional bandwidth equals  $2(f_H - f_L)/(f_H + f_L)$ .

(d) Ultra-wideband (UWB) transmitter. An intentional radiator that, at any point in time, has a fractional bandwidth equal to or greater than 0.20 or has a UWB bandwidth equal to or greater than 500 MHz, regardless of the fractional bandwidth.

(e) Imaging system. A general category consisting of ground penetrating radar systems, medical imaging systems, wall imaging systems through-wall imaging systems and surveillance systems. As used in this subpart, imaging systems do not include systems designed to detect the location of tags or systems used to transfer voice or data information.

(f) Ground penetrating radar (GPR) system. A field disturbance sensor that is designed to operate only when in contact with, or within one meter of, the ground for the purpose of detecting or obtaining the images of buried objects or determining the physical properties within the ground. The energy from the GPR is intentionally directed down into the ground for this purpose.

(g) Medical imaging system. A field disturbance sensor that is designed to detect the location or movement of objects within the body of a person or animal.

(h) Wall imaging system. A field disturbance sensor that is designed to detect the location of objects contained within a “wall” or to determine the physical properties within the “wall.” The “wall” is a concrete structure, the side of a bridge, the wall of a mine or another physical structure that is dense enough and thick enough to absorb the majority of the signal transmitted by the imaging system. This category of equipment does not include products such as “stud locators” that are designed to locate objects behind gypsum, plaster or similar walls that are not capable of absorbing the transmitted signal.

(i) Through-wall imaging system. A field disturbance sensor that is designed to detect the location or movement of persons or objects that are located on the other side of an opaque structure such as a wall or a ceiling. This category of equipment may include products such as “stud locators” that are designed to locate objects behind gypsum, plaster or similar walls that are not thick enough or dense enough to absorb the transmitted signal.

(j) Surveillance system. A field disturbance sensor used to establish a stationary RF perimeter field that is used for security purposes to detect the intrusion of persons or objects.

(k) EIRP. Equivalent isotropically radiated power, *i.e.*, the product of the power supplied to the antenna and the antenna gain in a given direction relative to an isotropic antenna. The EIRP, in terms of dBm, can be converted to a field strength, in dB $\mu$ V/m at 3 meters, by adding 95.2. As used in this subpart, EIRP refers to the highest signal strength measured in any direction and at any frequency from the UWB device, as tested in accordance with the procedures specified in Sections 15.31(a) and 15.523 of this chapter.

(l) Law enforcement, fire and emergency rescue organizations. As used in this subpart, this refers to those parties eligible to obtain a license from the FCC under the eligibility requirements specified in Section 90.20(a)(1) of this chapter.

(m) Hand held. As used in this subpart, a hand held device is a portable device, such as a lap top computer or a PDA, that is primarily hand held while being operated and that does not employ a fixed infrastructure.

#### Section 15.505 Cross reference.

(a) Except where specifically stated otherwise within this subpart, the provisions of Subparts A and B and of Sections 15.201 through 15.204 and Section 15.207 of Subpart C of this part apply to unlicensed UWB intentional radiators. The provisions of Sections 15.35(c) and 15.205 do not apply to devices operated under this subpart. The provisions of Footnote US 246 to the Table of Frequency Allocations contained in Section 2.106 of this chapter does not apply to devices operated under this subpart.

(b) The requirements of Subpart F apply only to the radio transmitter, *i.e.*, the intentional radiator, contained in the UWB device. Other aspects of the operation of a UWB device may be subject to requirements contained elsewhere in this chapter. In particular, a UWB device that contains digital circuitry not directly associated with the operation of the transmitter also is subject to the requirements for unintentional radiators in Subpart B of this chapter. Similarly, an associated receiver that operates (tunes) within the frequency range 30 MHz to 960 MHz is subject to the requirements in Subpart B of this chapter.

#### Section 15.507 Marketing of UWB equipment.

In some cases, the operation of UWB devices is limited to specific parties, *e.g.*, law enforcement, fire and rescue organizations operating under the auspices of a state or local government. The marketing of UWB devices must be directed solely to parties eligible to operate the equipment. The responsible party, as defined in Section 2.909 of this chapter, is responsible for ensuring that the equipment is marketed only to eligible parties. Marketing of the equipment in any other manner may be considered grounds for revocation of the grant of certification issued for the equipment.

#### Section 15.509 Technical requirements for ground penetrating radars and wall imaging systems.

(a) The UWB bandwidth of an imaging system operating under the provisions of this section must be below 10.6 GHz.

(b) Operation under the provisions of this section is limited to GPRs and wall imaging systems operated for purposes associated with law enforcement, fire fighting, emergency rescue, scientific research, commercial mining, or construction.

(1) Parties operating this equipment must be eligible for licensing under the provisions of Part 90 of this chapter.

(2) The operation of imaging systems under this section requires coordination, as detailed in Section 15.525 of this part.

(c) A GPR that is designed to be operated while being hand held and a wall imaging system shall contain a manually operated switch that causes the transmitter to cease operation within 10 seconds of being released by the operator. In lieu of a switch located on the imaging system, it is permissible to operate an imaging system by remote control provided the imaging system ceases transmission within 10 seconds of the remote switch being released by the operator.

(d) The radiated emissions at or below 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the emission levels in Section 15.209. The radiated emissions above 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of 1 MHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 960-1610         | -65.3       |
| 1610-1990        | -53.3       |
| 1990-3100        | -51.3       |
| 3100-10600       | -41.3       |
| Above 10600      | -51.3       |

(e) In addition to the radiated emission limits specified in the table in paragraph (d) of this section, UWB transmitters operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of no less than 1 kHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1164-1240        | -75.3       |
| 1559-1610        | -75.3       |

(f) For UWB devices where the frequency at which the highest radiated emission occurs,  $f_M$ , is above 960 MHz, there is a limit on the peak level of the emissions contained within a 50 MHz bandwidth centered on  $f_M$ . That limit is 0 dBm EIRP. It is acceptable to employ a different resolution bandwidth, and a correspondingly different peak emission limit, following the procedures described in Section 15.521.

Section 15.510 Technical requirements for through-wall imaging systems.

(a) The UWB bandwidth of an imaging system operating under the provisions of this section must be below 960 MHz or the center frequency,  $f_c$ , and the frequency at which the highest radiated emission occurs,  $f_M$ , must be contained between 1990 MHz and 10600 MHz.

(b) Operation under the provisions of this section is limited to through-wall imaging systems operated by law enforcement, emergency rescue or firefighting organizations that are under the authority of a local or state government.

(c) For through-wall imaging systems operating with the UWB bandwidth below 960 MHz:

(1) Parties operating this equipment must be eligible for licensing under the provisions of Part 90 of this chapter.

(2) The operation of these imaging systems requires coordination, as detailed in Section 15.525.

(3) The imaging system shall contain a manually operated switch that causes the transmitter to cease operation within 10 seconds of being released by the operator. In lieu of a switch located on the imaging system, it is permissible to operate an imaging system by remote control provided the imaging system ceases transmission within 10 seconds of the remote switch being released by the operator.

(4) The radiated emissions at or below 960 MHz shall not exceed the emission levels in Section 15.209. The radiated emissions above 960 MHz shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of 1 MHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 960-1610         | -65.3       |
| 1610-1990        | -53.3       |
| Above 1990       | -51.3       |

(5) In addition to the radiated emission limits specified in the table in paragraph (c)(4) of this section, emissions from these imaging systems shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of no less than 1 kHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1164-1240        | -75.3       |
| 1559-1610        | -75.3       |

(d) For equipment operating with  $f_c$  and  $f_M$  between 1990 MHz and 10600 MHz:

(1) Parties operating this equipment must hold a license issued by the Federal Communications Commission to operate a transmitter in the Public Safety Radio Pool under Part 90 of this chapter. The license may be held by the organization for which the UWB operator works on a paid or

volunteer basis.

(2) This equipment may be operated only for law enforcement applications, the providing of emergency services, and necessary training operations.

(3) The radiated emissions at or below 960 MHz shall not exceed the emission levels in Section 15.209 of this chapter. The radiated emissions above 960 MHz shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of 1 MHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 960-1610         | -46.3       |
| 1610-10600       | -41.3       |
| Above 10600      | -51.3       |

(4) In addition to the radiated emission limits specified in the paragraph (d)(3) of this section, emissions from these imaging systems shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of no less than 1 kHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1164-1240        | -56.3       |
| 1559-1610        | -56.3       |

(5) There is a limit on the peak level of the emissions contained within a 50 MHz bandwidth centered on the frequency at which the highest radiated emission occurs,  $f_M$ . That limit is 0 dBm EIRP. It is acceptable to employ a different resolution bandwidth, and a correspondingly different peak emission limit, following the procedures described in Section 15.521.

(e) Through-wall imaging systems operating under the provisions of this section shall bear the following or similar statement in a conspicuous location on the device:

“Operation of this device is restricted to law enforcement, emergency rescue and firefighter personnel. Operation by any other party is a violation of 47 U.S.C. 301 and could subject the operator to serious legal penalties.”

#### Section 15.511 Technical requirements for surveillance systems.

(a) The UWB bandwidth of an imaging system operating under the provisions of this section must be contained between 1990 MHz and 10,600 MHz.

(b) Operation under the provisions of this section is limited to fixed surveillance systems operated by law enforcement, fire or emergency rescue organizations or by manufacturers licensees, petroleum licensees or power licensees as defined in Section 90.7 of this chapter.

(1) Parties operating under the provisions of this section must be eligible for licensing under the provisions of Part 90 of this chapter.

(2) The operation of imaging systems under this section requires coordination, as detailed in Section 15.525.

(c) The radiated emissions at or below 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the emission levels in Section 15.209. The radiated emissions above 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of 1 MHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 960-1610         | -53.3       |
| 1610-1990        | -51.3       |
| 1990-10600       | -41.3       |
| Above 10600      | -51.3       |

(d) In addition to the radiated emission limits specified in the table in paragraph (c) of this section, UWB transmitters operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of no less than 1 kHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1164-1240        | -63.3       |
| 1559-1610        | -63.3       |

(e) There is a limit on the peak level of the emissions contained within a 50 MHz bandwidth centered on the frequency at which the highest radiated emission occurs,  $f_M$ . That limit is 0 dBm EIRP. It is acceptable to employ a different resolution bandwidth, and a correspondingly different peak emission limit, following the procedures described in Section 15.521.

(f) Imaging systems operating under the provisions of this section shall bear the following or similar statement in a conspicuous location on the device:

“Operation of this device is restricted to law enforcement, fire and rescue officials, public utilities, and industrial entities. Operation by any other party is a violation of 47 U.S.C. 301 and could subject the operator to serious legal penalties.”

#### Section 15.513 Technical requirements for medical imaging systems.

(a) The UWB bandwidth of an imaging system operating under the provisions of this section must be contained between 3100 MHz and 10,600 MHz.

(b) Operation under the provisions of this section is limited to medical imaging systems used at the direction of, or under the supervision of, a licensed health care practitioner. The operation of imaging systems under this section requires coordination, as detailed in Section 15.525.

(c) A medical imaging system shall contain a manually operated switch that causes the transmitter to cease operation within 10 seconds of being released by the operator. In lieu of a switch located on the imaging system, it is permissible to operate an imaging system by remote control provided

the imaging system ceases transmission within 10 seconds of the remote switch being released by the operator.

(d) The radiated emissions at or below 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the emission levels in Section 15.209. The radiated emissions above 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of 1 MHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 960-1610         | -65.3       |
| 1610-1990        | -53.3       |
| 1990-3100        | -51.3       |
| 3100-10600       | -41.3       |
| Above 10600      | -51.3       |

(e) In addition to the radiated emission limits specified in the table in paragraph (d) of this section, UWB transmitters operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of no less than 1 kHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1164-1240        | -75.3       |
| 1559-1610        | -75.3       |

(f) There is a limit on the peak level of the emissions contained within a 50 MHz bandwidth centered on the frequency at which the highest radiated emission occurs,  $f_M$ . That limit is 0 dBm EIRP. It is acceptable to employ a different resolution bandwidth, and a correspondingly different peak emission limit, following the procedures described in Section 15.521.

#### Section 15.515 Technical requirements for vehicular radar systems.

(a) Operation under the provisions of this section is limited to UWB field disturbance sensors mounted in terrestrial transportation vehicles. These devices shall operate only when the vehicle is operating, *e.g.*, the engine is running. Operation shall occur only upon specific activation, such as upon starting the vehicle, changing gears, or engaging a turn signal.

(b) The UWB bandwidth of a vehicular radar system operating under the provisions of this section shall be contained between 22 GHz and 29 GHz. In addition, the center frequency,  $f_C$ , and the frequency at which the highest level emission occurs,  $f_M$ , must be greater than 24.075 GHz.

(c) Following proper installation, vehicular radar systems shall attenuate any emissions within the 23.6-24.0 GHz band that appear 38 degrees or greater above the horizontal plane by 25 dB below the limit specified in paragraph (d) of this section. For equipment authorized, manufactured or imported on or after January 1, 2005, this level of attenuation shall be 25 dB for any emissions within the 23.6-24.0 GHz band that appear 30 degrees or greater above the horizontal plane. For equipment authorized, manufactured or imported on or after January 1, 2010, this level of attenuation shall be 30 dB for any emissions within the 23.6-24.0 GHz band that appear 30 degrees or greater above the horizontal plane.

For equipment authorized, manufactured or imported on or after January 1, 2014, this level of attenuation shall be 35 dB for any emissions within the 23.6-24.0 GHz band that appear 30 degrees or greater above the horizontal plane. This level of attenuation can be achieved through the antenna directivity, through a reduction in output power or any other means.

(d) The radiated emissions at or below 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the emission levels in Section 15.209. The radiated emissions above 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of 1 MHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 960-1610         | -75.3       |
| 1610-22,000      | -61.3       |
| 22,000-29,000    | -41.3       |
| 29,000-31,000    | -51.3       |
| Above 31,000     | -61.3       |

(e) In addition to the radiated emission limits specified in the table in paragraph (d) of this section, UWB transmitters operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of no less than 1 kHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1164-1240        | -85.3       |
| 1559-1610        | -85.3       |

(f) There is a limit on the peak level of the emissions contained within a 50 MHz bandwidth centered on the frequency at which the highest radiated emission occurs,  $f_M$ . That limit is 0 dBm EIRP. It is acceptable to employ a different resolution bandwidth, and a correspondingly different peak emission limit, following the procedures described in Section 15.521.

(g) The emission levels from devices operating under the provisions of this section that employ gated transmissions may be measured with the gating active. Measurements made in this manner shall be repeated over multiple sweeps with the analyzer set for maximum hold until the amplitude stabilizes.

#### Section 15.517 Technical requirements for indoor UWB systems.

(a) Operation under the provisions of this section is limited to UWB transmitters employed solely for indoor operation.

(1) Indoor UWB devices, by the nature of their design, must be capable of operation only indoors. The necessity to operate with a fixed indoor infrastructure, *e.g.*, a transmitter that must be connected to the AC power lines, may be considered sufficient to demonstrate this.

(2) The emissions from equipment operated under this section shall not be intentionally directed outside of the building in which the equipment is located, such as through a window or a doorway, to perform an outside function, such as the detection of persons about to enter a building.

(3) The use of outdoor mounted antennas, *e.g.*, antennas mounted on the outside of a building or on a telephone pole, or any other outdoors infrastructure is prohibited.

(4) Field disturbance sensors installed inside of metal or underground storage tanks are considered to operate indoors provided the emissions are directed towards the ground.

(5) A communications system shall transmit only when the intentional radiator is sending information to an associated receiver.

(b) The UWB bandwidth of a UWB system operating under the provisions of this section must be contained between 3100 MHz and 10,600 MHz.

(c) The radiated emissions at or below 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the emission levels in Section 15.209. The radiated emissions above 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of 1 MHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 960-1610         | -75.3       |
| 1610-1990        | -53.3       |
| 1990-3100        | -51.3       |
| 3100-10600       | -41.3       |
| Above 10600      | -51.3       |

(d) In addition to the radiated emission limits specified in the table in paragraph (c) of this section, UWB transmitters operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of no less than 1 kHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1164-1240        | -85.3       |
| 1559-1610        | -85.3       |

(e) There is a limit on the peak level of the emissions contained within a 50 MHz bandwidth centered on the frequency at which the highest radiated emission occurs,  $f_M$ . That limit is 0 dBm EIRP. It is acceptable to employ a different resolution bandwidth, and a correspondingly different peak emission limit, following the procedures described in Section 15.521.

(f) UWB systems operating under the provisions of this section shall bear the following or similar statement in a conspicuous location on the device or in the instruction manual supplied with the device:

“This equipment may only be operated indoors. Operation outdoors is in violation of 47 U.S.C. 301 and could subject the operator to serious legal penalties.”

Section 15.519 Technical requirements for hand held UWB systems.

(a) UWB devices operating under the provisions of this section must be hand held, *i.e.*, they are relatively small devices that are primarily hand held while being operated and do not employ a fixed infrastructure.

(1) A UWB device operating under the provisions of this section shall transmit only when it is sending information to an associated receiver. The UWB intentional radiator shall cease transmission within 10 seconds unless it receives an acknowledgement from the associated receiver that its transmission is being received. An acknowledgment of reception must continue to be received by the UWB intentional radiator at least every 10 seconds or the UWB device must cease transmitting.

(2) The use of antennas mounted on outdoor structures, *e.g.*, antennas mounted on the outside of a building or on a telephone pole, or any fixed outdoors infrastructure is prohibited. Antennas may be mounted only on the hand held UWB device.

(3) UWB devices operating under the provisions of this section may operate indoors or outdoors.

(b) The UWB bandwidth of a device operating under the provisions of this section must be contained between 3100 MHz and 10,600 MHz.

(c) The radiated emissions at or below 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the emission levels in Section 15.209. The radiated emissions above 960 MHz from a device operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of 1 MHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 960-1610         | -75.3       |
| 1610-1990        | -63.3       |
| 1990-3100        | -61.3       |
| 3100-10600       | -41.3       |
| Above 10600      | -61.3       |

(d) In addition to the radiated emission limits specified in the table in paragraph (c) of this section, UWB transmitters operating under the provisions of this section shall not exceed the following average limits when measured using a resolution bandwidth of no less than 1 kHz:

| Frequency in MHz | EIRP in dBm |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1164-1240        | -85.3       |
| 1559-1610        | -85.3       |

(e) There is a limit on the peak level of the emissions contained within a 50 MHz bandwidth centered on the frequency at which the highest radiated emission occurs,  $f_M$ . That limit is 0 dBm EIRP. It is acceptable to employ a different resolution bandwidth, and a correspondingly different peak emission limit, following the procedures described in Section 15.521.

Section 15.521 Technical requirements applicable to all UWB devices.

(a) UWB devices may not be employed for the operation of toys. Operation onboard an aircraft, a ship or a satellite is prohibited.

(b) Manufacturers and users are reminded of the provisions of Sections 15.203 and 15.204.

(c) Emissions from digital circuitry used to enable the operation of the UWB transmitter shall comply with the limits in Section 15.209 of this chapter, rather than the limits specified in this subpart, provided it can be clearly demonstrated that those emissions from the UWB device are due solely to emissions from digital circuitry contained within the transmitter and that the emissions are not intended to be radiated from the transmitter's antenna. Emissions from associated digital devices, as defined in Section 15.3(k) of this chapter, *e.g.*, emissions from digital circuitry used to control additional functions or capabilities other than the UWB transmission, are subject to the limits contained in Subpart B of Part 15 of this chapter.

(d) Within the tables in Sections 15.509, 15.511, 15.513, 15.515, 15.517, and 15.519, the tighter emission limit applies at the band edges. Radiated emission levels at and below 960 MHz are based on measurements employing a CISPR quasi-peak detector. Radiated emission levels above 960 MHz are based on RMS average measurements over a 1 MHz resolution bandwidth. The RMS average measurement is based on the use of a spectrum analyzer with a resolution bandwidth of 1 MHz, an RMS detector, and a 1 millisecond or less averaging time. Unless otherwise stated, if pulse gating is employed where the transmitter is quiescent for intervals that are long compared to the nominal pulse repetition interval, measurements shall be made with the pulse train gated on. Alternative measurement procedures may be considered by the Commission.  
[The reference to a 1 millisecond or less averaging time denotes the integration time period for each bin on the spectrum analyzer. The analyzer sweep time/number of bins must not exceed one millisecond. Trace averaging should not be used in making the RMS measurements.]

(e) The frequency at which the highest radiated emission occurs,  $f_M$ , must be contained within the UWB bandwidth.

(f) Imaging systems may be employed only for the type of information exchange described in their specific definitions contained in Section 15.503. The detection of tags or the transfer of data or voice information is not permitted under the standards for imaging systems.

(g) When a peak measurement is required, it is acceptable to use a resolution bandwidth other than the 50 MHz specified in this subpart. This resolution bandwidth shall not be lower than 1 MHz or greater than 50 MHz, and the measurement shall be centered on the frequency at which the highest radiated emission occurs,  $f_M$ . If a resolution bandwidth other than 50 MHz is employed, the peak EIRP limit shall be  $20 \log (RBW/50)$  dBm where RBW is the resolution bandwidth in megahertz that is employed. This may be converted to a peak field strength level at 3 meters using  $E(\text{dB}\mu\text{V/m}) = P(\text{dBm EIRP}) + 95.2$ . If RBW is greater than 3 MHz, the application for certification filed with the Commission must contain a detailed description of the test procedure, calibration of the test setup, and the instrumentation employed in the testing.

(h) The highest frequency employed in Section 15.33 to determine the frequency range over which radiated measurements are made shall be based on the center frequency,  $f_c$ , unless a higher frequency is generated within the UWB device. For measuring emission levels, the spectrum shall be investigated from the lowest frequency generated in the UWB transmitter, without going below 9 kHz, up to the frequency range shown in Section 15.33(a) or up to  $f_c + 3/(\text{pulse width in seconds})$ , whichever is higher. There is no requirement to measure emissions beyond 40 GHz provided  $f_c$  is less than 10 GHz; beyond 100 GHz if  $f_c$  is at or above 10 GHz and below 30 GHz; or beyond 200 GHz if  $f_c$  is at or above 30 GHz.

(i) The prohibition in Sections 2.201(f) and 15.5(d) of this chapter against Class B (damped wave) emissions does not apply to UWB devices operating under this subpart.

(j) Responsible parties are reminded of the other standards and requirements incorporated by reference in Section 15.505, such as a limit on emissions conducted onto the AC power lines.

#### Section 15.523 Measurement procedures.

Measurements shall be made in accordance with the procedures specified by the Commission.

#### Section 15.525 Coordination requirements.

(a) UWB imaging systems require coordination through the FCC before the equipment may be used. The operator shall comply with any constraints on equipment usage resulting from this coordination.

(b) The users of UWB imaging devices shall supply operational areas to the FCC Office of Engineering and Technology, which shall coordinate this information with the Federal Government through the National Telecommunications and Information Administration. The information provided by the UWB operator shall include the name, address and other pertinent contact information of the user, the desired geographical area(s) of operation, and the FCC ID number and other nomenclature of the UWB device. If the imaging device is intended to be used for mobile applications, the geographical area(s) of operation may be the state(s) or county(ies) in which the equipment will be operated. The operator of an imaging system used for fixed operation shall supply a specific geographical location or the address at which the equipment will be operated. This material shall be submitted to the following address:

Frequency Coordination Branch, OET  
Federal Communications Commission  
445 12<sup>th</sup> Street, SW  
Washington, D.C. 20554

Attn: UWB Coordination

(c) The manufacturers, or their authorized sales agents, must inform purchasers and users of their systems of the requirement to undertake detailed coordination of operational areas with the FCC prior to the equipment being operated.

(d) Users of authorized, coordinated UWB systems may transfer them to other qualified users

and to different locations upon coordination of change of ownership or location to the FCC and coordination with existing authorized operations.

(e) The FCC/NTIA coordination report shall identify those geographical areas within which the operation of an imaging system requires additional coordination or within which the operation of an imaging system is prohibited. If additional coordination is required for operation within specific geographical areas, a local coordination contact will be provided. Except for operation within these designated areas, once the information requested on the UWB imaging system is submitted to the FCC no additional coordination with the FCC is required provided the reported areas of operation do not change. If the area of operation changes, updated information shall be submitted to the FCC following the procedure in paragraph (b) of this section.

(f) The coordination of routine UWB operations shall not take longer than 15 business days from the receipt of the coordination request by NTIA. Special temporary operations may be handled with an expedited turn-around time when circumstances warrant. The operation of UWB systems in emergency situations involving the safety of life or property may occur without coordination provided a notification procedure, similar to that contained in Section 2.405(a) through (e) of this chapter, is followed by the UWB equipment user.

## Subpart G – Access Broadband Over Power Line (Access BPL)

### Section 15.601 Scope.

This subpart sets out the regulations for Access Broadband over Power Line (Access BPL) devices operating in the 1.705-80 MHz band over medium or low voltage lines.

### Section 15.603 Definitions.

- (a) Excluded Band: A band of frequencies within which Access BPL operations are not permitted.
- (b) Exclusion Zone: A geographical area within which Access BPS operations are not permitted in certain frequency bands.
- (c) Consultation. The process of communication between an entity operating Access BPL and a licensed public safety or other designated point of contact for the purpose of avoiding potential harmful interference.
- (d) Consultation area: A designated geographical area within which consultation with public safety users or other designated point of contact is required before an Access BPL may be operated at designated frequencies.
- (e) Low Voltage power line. A power line carrying low voltage, *e.g.*, 240/120 volts from a distribution transformer to a customer's premises.
- (f) Medium Voltage power line. A power line carrying between 1,000 to 40,000 volts from a power substation to neighborhoods. Medium voltage lines may be overhead or underground, depending on the power grid network topology.
- (g) Access BPL Database. A database operated by an industry-sponsored entity, recognized by the Federal Communications Commission and the National Telecommunications and Information Administration (NTIA), containing information regarding existing and planned Access BPL systems, as required in Section 15.615(a) of this subpart.

### Section 15.605 Cross reference.

- (a) The provisions of subparts A and B of this part apply to Access BPL devices, except where specifically noted. The provisions of subparts C-F of this part do not apply to Access BPL devices except where specifically noted.
- (b) The requirements of this subpart apply only to the radio circuitry that is used to provide carrier current operation for the Access BPL device. Other aspects of the operation of an Access BPL device may be subject to requirements contained elsewhere in this chapter. In particular, an Access BPL device that includes digital circuitry that is not used solely to enable the operation of the radio frequency circuitry used to provide carrier current operation also is subject to the requirements for unintentional

radiators in subpart B.

#### Section 15.607 Equipment Authorization of Access BPL equipment

Access BPL equipment shall be subject to Certification as specified in Section 15.101 of this part.

#### Section 15.609 Marketing of Access BPL equipment

The marketing of Access BPL equipment must be directed solely to parties eligible to operate the equipment. Eligible parties consist of AC power line public utilities, Access BPL service providers and associates of Access BPL service providers. The responsible party, as defined in Section 2.909 of this chapter, is responsible for ensuring that the equipment is marketed only to eligible parties. Marketing of the equipment in any other manner may be considered grounds for revocation of the grant of certification issued for the equipment.

#### Section 15.611 General technical requirements.

(a) Conducted emission limits. Access BPL is not subject to the conducted emission limits of Section 15.107.

(b) Radiated emission limits

(1) Medium voltage power lines

(i) Access BPL systems that operate in the frequency range of 1.705 kHz to 30 MHz over medium voltage power lines shall comply with the radiated emission limits for intentional radiators provided in Section 15.209 of this part.

(ii) Access BPL systems that operate in the frequency range above 30 MHz over medium voltage power lines shall comply with the radiated emission limits provided in Section 15.109(b) of this part.

(2) Low voltage power lines. Access BPL systems that operate over low-voltage power lines, including those that operate over low-voltage lines that are connected to the in-building wiring, shall comply with the radiated emission limits provided in Section 15.109(a) and (e) of this part.

(c) Interference Mitigation and Avoidance.

(1) Access BPL systems shall incorporate adaptive interference mitigation techniques to remotely reduce power and adjust operating frequencies, in order to avoid site-specific, local use of the same spectrum by licensed services. These techniques may include adaptive or “notch” filtering, or complete avoidance of frequencies, or bands of frequencies, locally used by licensed radio operations.

(i) For frequencies below 30 MHz, when a notch filter is used to avoid interference to a specific frequency band, the Access BPL system shall be capable of attenuating emissions within that band to a level at least 20 dB below the applicable Part 15 limits.

(ii) For frequencies above 30 MHz, when a notch filter is used to avoid interference to a specific frequency band, the Access BPL system shall be capable of attenuating emissions within that band to a level at least 10 dB below the applicable Part 15 limits.

(iii) At locations where an Access BPL operator attenuates radiated emissions from its operations in accordance with the above required capabilities, we will not require that operator to take further actions to resolve complaints of harmful interference to mobile operations.

(2) Access BPL systems shall comply with applicable radiated emission limits upon power-up following a fault condition, or during a start-up operation after a shut-off procedure, by the use of a non-volatile memory, or some other method, to immediately restore previous settings with programmed notches and excluded bands, to avoid time delay caused by the need for manual re-programming during which protected services may be vulnerable.

(3) Access BPL systems shall incorporate a remote-controllable shut-down feature to deactivate, from a central location, any unit found to cause harmful interference, if other interference mitigation techniques do not resolve the interference problem.

#### Section 15.613 Measurement Procedures.

Compliance measurements for Access BPL shall be made in accordance with the Guidelines for Access BPL systems specified by the Commission.

#### Section 15.615 General administrative requirements.

(a) *Access BPL Database.* Entities operating Access BPL systems shall supply to an industry-recognized entity, information on all existing Access BPL systems and all proposed Access BPL systems for inclusion into a publicly available data base, within 30 days prior to initiation of service. Such information shall include the following:

- (1) The name of the Access BPL provider
- (2) The frequencies of the Access BPL operation
- (3) The postal zip codes served by the specific Access BPL operation
- (4) The manufacturer and type of Access BPL equipment and its associated FCC ID number, or, in the case of Access BPL equipment that has been subject to verification, the Trade Name and Model Number, as specified on the equipment label.
- (5) The contact information, including both phone number and email address of a person at, or associated with, the BPL operator's company, to facilitate the resolution of any interference complaint.
- (6) The proposed/or actual date of Access BPL operation.

(b) The Access BPL database manager shall enter this information into the publicly accessible database within three (3) business days of receipt.

(c) No notification to the Commission is required.

(d) A licensed spectrum user experiencing harmful interference that is suspected to be caused by an Access BPL system shall inform the local BPL operator's contact person designated in the Access BPL database. The investigation of the reported interference and the resolution of confirmed harmful interference from the Access BPL system shall be successfully completed by the BPL operator within a reasonable time period according to a mutually acceptable schedule, after the receipt of an interference complaint, in order to avoid protracted disruptions to licensed services. The Access BPL operator shall respond to complaints of harmful interference from public safety users within 24 hours. With regard to public safety complaints, the BPL provider shall be required to immediately cease the operations causing such complaint if it fails to respond within 24 hours.

(e) *Consultation with public safety users.* An entity operating an Access BPL system shall notify and consult with the public safety users in the area where it plans to deploy Access BPL, at least 30 days prior to initiation of any operation or service. This entity shall design or implement the Access BPL system such that it does not cause harmful interference in those frequencies or bands used by the public safety agencies in the area served by the Access BPL system. The notification shall include, at a minimum, the information in paragraph (a) of this section.

(f) *Federal government spectrum users and other radio service users.* An entity operating an Access BPL system shall ensure that, within its Access BPL deployment area, its system does not operate on any frequencies designated as excluded bands or on identified frequencies within any designated exclusion zones.

(1) *Excluded Bands.* To protect Aeronautical (land) stations and aircraft receivers, Access BPL operations using overhead medium voltage power lines are prohibited in the frequency bands listed in Table 1. Specifically, such BPL systems shall not place carrier frequencies in these bands.

Table 1. Excluded Frequency Bands

| FREQUENCY BAND      |
|---------------------|
| 2,850 – 3,025 kHz   |
| 3,400 – 3,500 kHz   |
| 4,650 – 4,700 kHz   |
| 5,450 – 5,680 kHz   |
| 6,525 – 6,685 kHz   |
| 8,815 – 8,965 kHz   |
| 10,005 – 10,100 kHz |
| 11,275 – 11,400 kHz |
| 13,260 – 13,360 kHz |
| 17,900 – 17,970 kHz |
| 21,924 – 22,000 kHz |

| FREQUENCY BAND  |
|-----------------|
| 74.8 – 75.2 MHz |

(2) *Exclusion zones.* Exclusion zones encompass the operation of any Access BPL system within 1km of the boundary of coast station facilities at the coordinates listed in Tables 2 and 2.1. Exclusion zones also encompass the operation of Access BPL systems using overhead medium voltage power lines within 65 km of the Very Large Array observatory located at the coordinate 34° 04' 43.50" N, 107° 37' 03.82" W. Exclusion zones further encompass the operation of Access BPL systems using overhead low voltage power lines or underground power lines within 47 km of the Very Large Array observatory located at the coordinate 34° 04' 43.50" N, 107° 37' 03.82" W. Within the exclusion zones for coast stations, Access BPL systems shall not use carrier frequencies within the band of 2173.5-2190.5 kHz. Within the exclusion zone for the Very Large Array radio astronomy observatory, Access BPL systems shall not use carrier frequencies within the 73.0-74.6 MHz band.

(i) *Existing coast station facilities.* Access BPL systems shall not operate in the frequency band 2,173.5 – 2,190.5 kHz, within 1 kilometer (km) of the boundary of coast station facilities at the coordinates listed in Tables 2 and 2.1. BPL operators planning to deploy Access BPL devices at these frequencies in areas within these exclusion zones as defined above shall consult with the appropriate point of contact for these coast stations to ensure harmful interference is prevented at these facilities.

Table 2. Exclusion zones for U.S. Coast Guard Coast Stations

Point of Contact  
 Commandant (CG 622)  
 U.S. Coast Guard  
 2100 2<sup>nd</sup> Street, S.W.  
 Washington, DC 20593 – 0001  
 Telephone: (202) 267 – 2860  
 E-Mail: cgcomms@comdt.uscg.mil

| Locale                              | Latitude      | Longitude      |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| Group Guam                          | 13° 35' 23" N | 144° 50' 24" E |
| GANTSEC                             | 18° 18' 00" N | 65° 46' 59" W  |
| Puerto Rico                         | 18° 28' 11" N | 66° 07' 47" W  |
| Honolulu                            | 21° 18' 21" N | 157° 53' 23" W |
| Group Key West                      | 24° 33' 35" N | 81° 47' 59" W  |
| Trumbo Point CG Base                | 24° 33' 58" N | 81° 47' 57" W  |
| Miami                               | 25° 37' 28" N | 80° 23' 07" W  |
| Everglades Park                     | 25° 50' 10" N | 81° 23' 13" W  |
| Group Saint Petersburg (Everglades) | 25° 51' 00" N | 81° 23' 24" W  |
| Station Ft. Lauderdale              | 26° 05' 21" N | 80° 06' 40" W  |
| Station Ft. Myers Beach             | 26° 27' 34" N | 81° 57' 15" W  |

| Locale                               | Latitude      | Longitude      |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| Group Miami (Ft. Pierce)             | 27° 27' 36" N | 80° 18' 36" W  |
| Station Ft. Pierce                   | 27° 27' 50" N | 80° 18' 27" W  |
| Group Corpus Christi                 | 27° 42' 01" N | 97° 16' 11" W  |
| Group Corpus Christi                 | 27° 42' 06" N | 97° 16' 45" W  |
| ESD Saint Petersburg                 | 27° 45' 21" N | 82° 37' 32" W  |
| Group Saint Petersburg               | 27° 46' 11" N | 82° 37' 47" W  |
| Station Port O'Connor                | 28° 26' 03" N | 96° 25' 39" W  |
| S. Padre Island                      | 28° 26' 22" N | 97° 09' 56" W  |
| Freeport                             | 28° 55' 59" N | 95° 16' 59" W  |
| Group Galveston (Freeport)           | 28° 56' 24" N | 95° 17' 59" W  |
| Station YANKEETOWN                   | 29° 01' 51" N | 82° 43' 39" W  |
| Station Ponce De Leon Inlet          | 29° 03' 50" N | 81° 55' 01" W  |
| Group New Orleans (Grand Isle)       | 29° 15' 53" N | 89° 57' 26" W  |
| Galveston                            | 29° 19' 59" N | 94° 46' 18" W  |
| Kapalan                              | 29° 20' 04" N | 94° 47' 17" W  |
| Sabine                               | 29° 43' 42" N | 93° 52' 14" W  |
| New Orleans                          | 30° 01' 17" N | 90° 07' 24" W  |
| Panama City                          | 30° 10' 01" N | 85° 45' 04" W  |
| Group Mobile (Panama City)           | 30° 10' 12" N | 85° 45' 36" W  |
| ANT Jacksonville Beach               | 30° 17' 16" N | 81° 24' 10" W  |
| Pensacola                            | 30° 20' 24" N | 87° 18' 17" W  |
| Group Mayport                        | 30° 23' 10" N | 81° 26' 01" W  |
| Group Mayport                        | 30° 23' 24" N | 81° 25' 48" W  |
| Ft. Morgan                           | 30° 39' 07" N | 88° 03' 12" W  |
| Tybee Lighthouse                     | 32° 01' 15" N | 80° 50' 39" W  |
| Point Loma Lighthouse                | 32° 39' 56" N | 117° 14' 34" W |
| Point Loma                           | 32° 40' 07" N | 117° 14' 14" W |
| Activities San Diego                 | 32° 43' 59" N | 117° 11' 13" W |
| Group Charleston (Sullivan's Island) | 32° 45' 00" N | 79° 49' 47" W  |
| Sullivan's Island Lights             | 32° 45' 02" N | 79° 50' 03" W  |
| Group Charleston                     | 32° 46' 25" N | 79° 56' 37" W  |
| Group San Diego                      | 32° 52' 48" N | 118° 26' 23" W |
| San Pedro                            | 33° 45' 00" N | 118° 15' 58" W |
| Group Fort Macon                     | 33° 53' 24" N | 78° 01' 48" W  |
| Point Mugu                           | 33° 59' 32" N | 119° 07' 18" W |
| Group LA / Long Beach                | 34° 07' 11" N | 119° 06' 35" W |
| Channel Island                       | 34° 09' 17" N | 119° 13' 11" W |
| Station Oxnard Channel Island        | 34° 09' 43" N | 119° 13' 19" W |
| Group Ft. Macon                      | 34° 41' 48" N | 76° 40' 59" W  |
| Group Cape Hatteras                  | 35° 13' 59" N | 75° 31' 59" W  |
| Group Cape Hatteras                  | 35° 15' 35" N | 75° 31' 48" W  |
| Morro Bay (Cambria)                  | 35° 31' 21" N | 121° 03' 21" W |
| San Clemente Island                  | 32° 50' 24" N | 118° 23' 15" W |
| Point Pinos                          | 36° 38' 12" N | 121° 56' 06" W |

| Locale                   | Latitude      | Longitude      |
|--------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| CAMSLANT                 | 36° 43' 47" N | 76° 01' 11" W  |
| Group Hampton Roads      | 36° 53' 01" N | 76° 21' 10" W  |
| Point Montara            | 37° 31' 23" N | 122° 30' 47" W |
| Point Montara Lighthouse | 37° 32' 09" N | 122° 31' 08" W |
| Group San Francisco      | 37° 32' 23" N | 122° 31' 11" W |
| Group San Francisco      | 37° 48' 34" N | 122° 21' 55" W |
| Point Bonita             | 37° 49' 00" N | 122° 31' 41" W |
| Group Eastern Shores     | 37° 55' 47" N | 75° 22' 47" W  |
| Group Eastern Shore      | 37° 55' 50" N | 75° 22' 58" W  |
| CAMSPAC                  | 38° 06' 00" N | 122° 55' 48" W |
| Point Arena Lighthouse   | 38° 57' 18" N | 124° 44' 28" W |
| Point Arena              | 38° 57' 36" N | 123° 44' 23" W |
| Group Atlantic City      | 39° 20' 59" N | 74° 27' 42" W  |
| Activities New York      | 40° 36' 06" N | 74° 03' 36" W  |
| Activities New York      | 40° 37' 11" N | 74° 04' 11" W  |
| ESD Moriches Hut         | 40° 47' 19" N | 72° 44' 53" W  |
| Group Moriches           | 40° 47' 23" N | 72° 45' 00" W  |
| Group Humboldt Bay       | 40° 58' 41" N | 124° 06' 31" W |
| Group Humboldt Bay       | 40° 58' 47" N | 124° 06' 35" W |
| Trinidad Head            | 41° 03' 15" N | 124° 09' 02" W |
| Group Long Island Sound  | 41° 16' 12" N | 72° 54' 00" W  |
| Station New Haven        | 41° 16' 12" N | 72° 54' 06" W  |
| Station Brant Point      | 41° 17' 21" N | 70° 05' 31" W  |
| Group Woods Hole         | 41° 17' 23" N | 70° 04' 47" W  |
| Station Castle Hill      | 41° 27' 46" N | 71° 21' 42" W  |
| Group Woods Hole         | 41° 17' 29" N | 70° 40' 07" W  |
| Boston Area              | 41° 40' 12" N | 70° 31' 48" W  |
| Station Provincetown     | 42° 01' 48" N | 70° 12' 42" W  |
| Eastern Point            | 42° 36' 24" N | 70° 39' 26" W  |
| Cape Blanco              | 42° 50' 16" N | 124° 33' 52" W |
| Group North Bend         | 43° 24' 16" N | 124° 13' 22" W |
| Group North Bend         | 43° 24' 35" N | 124° 14' 23" W |
| Cape Elizabeth           | 43° 33' 28" N | 70° 12' 00" W  |
| Group South Portland     | 43° 38' 24" N | 70° 15' 00" W  |
| Group South Portland     | 43° 38' 45" N | 70° 14' 51" W  |
| Group SW Harbor          | 44° 16' 19" N | 68° 18' 27" W  |
| Group Southwest Harbor   | 44° 16' 48" N | 68° 18' 36" W  |
| Fort Stevens, Oregon     | 46° 09' 14" N | 123° 53' 07" W |
| Group Astoria            | 46° 09' 29" N | 123° 31' 48" W |
| Group Astoria            | 46° 09' 35" N | 123° 53' 24" W |
| La Push                  | 47° 49' 00" N | 124° 37' 59" W |
| Station Quillayute River | 47° 54' 49" N | 124° 38' 01" W |
| Port Angeles             | 48° 07' 59" N | 123° 25' 59" W |

| Locale                     | Latitude      | Longitude      |
|----------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| Group Port Angeles         | 48° 08' 24" N | 123° 24' 35" W |
| Juneau (Sitka)             | 57° 05' 24" N | 135° 15' 35" W |
| Kodiak                     | 57° 40' 47" N | 152° 28' 47" W |
| Valdez (Cape Hinchinbrook) | 60° 26' 23" N | 146° 25' 48" W |

Note: Systems of coordinates conform to NAD 83

Table 2.1 Exclusion zones for Maritime Public Coast Stations  
(Points of Contact are identified in the Commission's License Database)

| Licensee Name              | Location           | Latitude      | Longitude      |
|----------------------------|--------------------|---------------|----------------|
| Shipcom LLC                | Marina Del Ray, CA | 33° 56' 21" N | 118° 27' 14" W |
| Globe Wireless             | Rio Vista, CA      | 38° 11' 55" N | 121° 48' 34" W |
| Avalon Communications Corp | St. Thomas, VI     | 18° 21' 19" N | 64° 56' 48" W  |
| Globe Wireless             | Bishopville, MD    | 38° 24' 10" N | 75° 12' 59" W  |
| Shipcom LLC                | Mobile, AL         | 30° 40' 07" N | 88° 10' 23" W  |
| Shipcom, LLC               | Coden, AL          | 30° 22' 35" N | 88° 12' 20" W  |
| Globe Wireless             | Pearl River, LA    | 30° 22' 13" N | 89° 47' 26" W  |
| Globe Wireless             | Kahalelani, HI     | 21° 10' 33" N | 157° 10' 39" W |
| Globe Wireless             | Palo Alto, CA      | 37° 26' 44" N | 122° 06' 48" W |
| Globe Wireless             | Agana, GU          | 13° 29' 22" N | 144° 49' 39" E |

Note: Systems of coordinates conform to NAD 83

(ii) *New or relocated Coast stations.* In the unlikely event that a new or relocated coast station is established for the 2.173.5 – 2.190.5 kHz band at a coordinate not specified in Table 2 or 2.1, Access BPL operations in that frequency band shall also be excluded within 1 km of the new coast station facility;

(3) *Consultation areas.* Access BPL operators shall provide notification to the appropriate point of contact specified below regarding Access BPL operations at any frequencies of potential concern in the following consultation areas, at least 30 days prior to initiation of any operation or service. The notification shall include, at a minimum, the information in paragraph (a) of this section. We expect parties to consult in good faith to ensure that no harmful interference is caused to licensed operations and that any constraints on BPL deployments are minimized to those necessary to avoid harmful interference. In the unlikely event that a new or relocated aeronautical receive station is

established for the 1.7-30 MHz band at a coordinate not specified in Table 3b, Access BPL operators are also required to coordinate with the appropriate point of contact regarding Access BPL operations at any frequencies of potential concern in the new or relocated consultation areas, and to adjust their system operating parameters to protect the new or relocated aeronautical receive station.

(i) For frequencies in the 1.7–30 MHz frequency range, the areas within 4 km of facilities located at the following coordinates:

- A. the Commission’s protected field offices listed in 47 C.F.R. §0.121, the point-of-contact for which is specified in that section;
- B. (ii) the aeronautical stations listed in Tables 3a and 3b;
- C. (iii) the land stations listed in Tables 4 and 5;

(ii) For frequencies in the 1.7–80.0 MHz frequency range, the areas within 4 km of facilities located at the coordinates specified for radio astronomy facilities in 47 C.F.R. § 2.106, Note US 311.

Point of Contact

Electromagnetic Spectrum Manager  
National Science Foundation  
Division of Astronomical Sciences  
4201 Wilson Blvd. Suite 1045  
Arlington, VA 22230  
(703) 292-4896  
esm@nsf.gov

(iii) For frequencies in the 1.7–80 MHz frequency range, the area within 1 km of the Table Mountain Radio Receiving Zone, the coordinates and point of contact for which are specified in 47 C.F.R. § 21.113(b).

(iv) For frequencies in the 1.7–30 MHz frequency range, the areas within 37 km of radar receiver facilities located at the coordinates specified in Table 6.

Table 3a. Consultation Area Coordinates for Aeronautical (OR) Stations (1.7 – 30 MHz)

Point of contact

US Coast Guard HQ  
Division of Spectrum Management CG-622  
2100 Second St., SW. Rm. 6611  
Washington, DC 20593  
Tel: 202-267-6036  
Fax: 202-267-4106  
Email: [jtaboada@comdt.uscg.mil](mailto:jtaboada@comdt.uscg.mil)

| Command Name | Location      | Latitude    | Longitude     |
|--------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| Washington   | Arlington, VA | 38° 51' 07" | 77° 02' 15" W |

| Command Name   | Location           | Latitude         | Longitude      |
|----------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
|                |                    | N                |                |
| Cape Cod       | Cape Cod, MA       | 41° 42' 00"<br>N | 70° 30' 00" W  |
| Atlantic City  | Atlantic City, NJ  | 39° 20' 59"<br>N | 74° 27' 42" W  |
| Elizabeth City | Elizabeth City, NC | 36° 15' 53"<br>N | 76° 10' 32" W  |
| Savannah       | Savannah, GA       | 32° 01' 30"<br>N | 81° 08' 30" W  |
| Miami          | Opa Locka, FL      | 25° 54' 22"<br>N | 80° 16' 01" W  |
| Clearwater     | Clearwater, FL     | 27° 54' 27"<br>N | 82° 41' 29" W  |
| Borinquen      | Aguadilla, PR      | 18° 18' 36"<br>N | 67° 04' 48" W  |
| New Orleans    | New Orleans, LA    | 29° 49' 31"<br>N | 90° 02' 06" W  |
| Traverse City  | Traverse City, MI  | 44° 44' 24"<br>N | 85° 34' 54" W  |
| San Diego      | San Diego, CA      | 32° 43' 33"<br>N | 117° 10' 15" W |
| Sacramento     | McCllelan AFB, CA  | 38° 40' 06"<br>N | 121° 24' 04" W |
| Astoria        | Warrenton, OR      | 46° 25' 18"<br>N | 123° 47' 46" W |
| North Bend     | North Bend, OR     | 43° 24' 39"<br>N | 124° 14' 35" W |
| Barbers Point  | Kapolei, HI        | 21° 18' 01"<br>N | 158° 04' 15" W |
| Kodiak         | Kodiak, AK         | 57° 44' 19"<br>N | 152° 30' 18" W |
| Houston        | Houston, TX        | 29° 45' 00"<br>N | 95° 22' 00" W  |
| Detroit        | Mt. Clemens, MI    | 42° 36' 05"<br>N | 82° 50' 12" W  |
| San Francisco  | San Francisco, CA  | 37° 37' 58"<br>N | 122° 23' 20" W |
| Los Angeles    | Los Angeles, CA    | 33° 56' 36"<br>N | 118° 23' 48" W |
| Humboldt Bay   | McKinleyville, CA  | 40° 58' 39"<br>N | 124° 06' 45" W |
| Port Angeles   | Port Angeles, WA   | 48° 08' 25"<br>N | 123° 24' 48" W |
| Sitka          | Sitka, AK          | 57° 05' 50"      | 135° 21' 58" W |

| Command Name | Location | Latitude | Longitude |
|--------------|----------|----------|-----------|
|              |          | N        |           |

Note: Systems of coordinates conform to NAD 83

Table 3b. Consultation Area Coordinates for Aeronautical Receive Stations (1.7 – 30 MHz)

Point of contact  
ARINC  
2551 Riva Road  
Annapolis, MD 21401  
Tel: 1-800-633-6882  
Fax: 410-266-2329  
Email: [bplnotifications@arinc.com](mailto:bplnotifications@arinc.com)  
[www.arinc.com](http://www.arinc.com)

| Locale             | Latitude        | Longitude                                     |
|--------------------|-----------------|---|
| Southampton, NY    | 40° 55' 15" N   | 72° 23' 41" W                                 |
| Molokai, HI        | 21° 12' 23" N   | 157° 12' 30" W                                |
| Oahu, HI           | 21° 22' 27" N   | 158° 05' 56" W                                |
| Half Moon Bay, CA  | 37° 39' 64" N   | 122° 24' 44" W                                |
| Pt. Reyes, CA      | 38° 06' 00" N   | 122° 56' 00" W                                |
| Barrow, AK         | 71° 17' 24" N   | 156° 40' 12" W                                |
| Guam               | 13° 28' 12" N   | 144° 48' 0.0" E (note:<br>Eastern Hemisphere) |
| NY Comm Center, NY | 40° 46' 48" N   | 73° 05' 46" W                                 |
| Cedar Rapids, IA   | 42° 02' 05.0" N | 91° 38' 37.6" W                               |
| Beaumont, CA       | 33° 54' 27.1" N | 116° 59' 49.1" W                              |
| Fairfield, TX      | 31° 47' 02.6" N | 96° 47' 03.0" W                               |
| Houston, TX        | 29° 36' 35.8" N | 95° 16' 54.8" W                               |
| Miami, FL          | 25° 49' 05" N   | 80° 18' 28" W                                 |

Note: Systems of coordinates conform to NAD 83

Table 4. Consultation Area Coordinates for Land Stations, Set 1 (1.7–30 MHz)

Point Of Contact  
Us Coast Guard HQ  
Division of Spectrum Management CG-622  
2100 Second St., SW. Rm. 6611  
Washington, DC 20593  
Tel: 202-267-6036  
Fax: 202-267-4106  
Email: [jtaboada@comdt.uscg.mil](mailto:jtaboada@comdt.uscg.mil)

| Command Name | Location | Latitude | Longitude |
|--------------|----------|----------|-----------|
|--------------|----------|----------|-----------|

| Command Name        | Location          | Latitude      | Longitude      |
|---------------------|-------------------|---------------|----------------|
| COMMSTA Boston      | Maspee, MA        | 41° 24' 00" N | 70° 18' 57" W  |
| Camslant            | Chesapeake, VA    | 36° 33' 59" N | 76° 15' 23" W  |
| COMMSTA Miami       | Miami, FL         | 25° 36' 58" N | 80° 23' 04" W  |
| COMMSTA New Orleans | Belle Chasse, IA  | 29° 52' 40" N | 89° 54' 46" W  |
| Campspac            | Pt. Reyes Sta, CA | 38° 06' 00" N | 122° 55' 48" W |
| COMMSTA Honolulu    | Wahiawa, HI       | 21° 31' 08" N | 157° 59' 28" W |
| COMMSTA Kodiak      | Kodiak, AK        | 57° 04' 26" N | 152° 28' 20" W |
| Guam                | Finegayan, GU     | 13° 53' 08" N | 144° 50' 20" E |

Note: Systems of coordinates conform to NAD 83

Table 5. Consultation Area Coordinates for Land Stations, Set 2 (1.7 – 30 MHz)

Point of contact  
COTHEN Technical Support Center  
COTHEN Program Manager  
Tel: (800) 829-6336

| Site Name         | Latitude      | Longitude      |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|
| Albuquerque, NM   | 35° 05' 02" N | 105° 34' 23" W |
| Arecibo, PR       | 18° 17' 26" N | 66° 22' 33" W  |
| Atlanta, GA       | 32° 33' 06" N | 84° 23' 35" W  |
| Beaufort, SC      | 34° 34' 22" N | 76° 09' 48" W  |
| Cape Charles, VA  | 37° 05' 37" N | 75° 58' 06" W  |
| Cedar Rapids, IA  | 42° 00' 09" N | 91° 17' 39" W  |
| Denver, CO        | 39° 15' 45" N | 103° 34' 23" W |
| Fort Myers, FL    | 81° 31' 20" N | 26° 20' 01" W  |
| Kansas City, MO   | 38° 22' 10" N | 93° 21' 48" W  |
| Las Vegas, NV     | 36° 21' 15" N | 114° 17' 33" W |
| Lovelock, NV      | 40° 03' 07" N | 118° 18' 56" W |
| Memphis, TN       | 34° 21' 57" N | 90° 02' 43" W  |
| Miami, FL         | 25° 46' 20" N | 80° 28' 48" W  |
| Morehead City, NC | 34° 34' 50" N | 78° 13' 59" W  |

| Site Name         | Latitude         | Longitude      |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------|
|                   | N                |                |
| Oklahoma City, OK | 34° 30' 52"<br>N | 97° 30' 52" W  |
| Orlando, FL       | 28° 31' 30"<br>N | 80° 48' 58" W  |
| Reno, NV          | 38° 31' 12"<br>N | 119° 14' 37" W |
| Sarasota, FL      | 27° 12' 41"<br>N | 81° 31' 20" W  |
| Wilmington, NC    | 34° 29' 24"<br>N | 78° 04' 31" W  |

Note: Systems of coordinates conform to NAD 83

Table 6. Consultation Area Coordinates for Radar Receiver Stations (1.7 – 30 MHz)

Point Of Contact  
ROTHR Deputy Program Manager  
(540) – 653 – 3624

| LATITUDE / LONGITUDE  |
|-----------------------|
| 18° 01' N / 66° 30' W |
| 28° 05' N / 98° 43' W |
| 36° 34' N / 76° 18' W |

Note: Systems of coordinates conform to NAD 83